

2011

LX 570

OWNER'S MANUAL

Your Lexus dealer

Your Lexus dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.
If there is not a Lexus dealer near you, please call the following number:

U.S. OWNERS

- In the U.S. mainland or Canada:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance
  1-800-25-LEXUS or 1-800-255-3987 (Toll-Free)
- In Hawaii:
  Servco Automotive Roadside Assistance/Customer Services
  1-800-25-LEXUS or 1-800-255-3987 (Toll-Free)

CANADIAN OWNERS

- In Canada or the U.S. mainland:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance/Customer Service
  1-800-26-LEXUS or 1-800-265-3987 (Toll-Free)

Please access our **websites** for further information.

- The U.S. mainland: www.lexus.com
- Hawaii: www.servcolexus.com
- Canada : www.lexus.ca

©2011 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	**Before driving**	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column
2	**When driving**	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information
3	**Interior features**	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience
4	**Maintenance and care**	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information
5	**When trouble arises**	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident
6	**Vehicle specifications**	Detailed vehicle information
7	**For owners**	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners, and seat belt and SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual

For information regarding the navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

1 Before driving

1-1. Key information

Keys 28

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Smart access system with push-button start 33
Wireless remote control 46
Side doors 49
Back door 54

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats 64
Rear seats 66
Driving position memory system 83
Head restraints 87
Seat belts 91
Steering wheel 100
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 102
Outside rear view mirrors 104

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 107
Moon roof 110

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 113

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 116
Alarm 118

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture 121
SRS airbags 123
Front passenger occupant classification system 137
Child restraint systems 143
Installing child restraints 148

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 162
Engine (ignition) switch 172
Automatic transmission 176
Turn signal lever 181
Parking brake 182
Horn 183

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 184
Indicators and warning lights 187
Multi-information display 191

2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 194
Fog light switch 198
Windshield wipers and washer 199
Rear window wiper and washer 202
Headlight cleaner switch 204

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 205
Dynamic radar cruise control 209
Intuitive parking assist 224
Rear view monitor system 232
Wide view front & side monitor 236
4-Wheel AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) 246
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension) 257
Four-wheel drive system 258
Crawl Control 263
Driving assist systems 267
Pre-Collision System 274

2-5. Driving information

Off-road precautions 279
Cargo and luggage 284
Vehicle load limits 291
Winter driving tips 292
Trailer towing 297
Dinghy towing 317

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the touch screen

Touch screen 320
Setting the touch screen 326

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front air conditioning system 338
Rear air conditioning system 349
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers 353
Windshield wiper de-icer 354

3-3. Using the audio system

Audio system type 355
Using the radio 360
Using the CD/DVD player 370
Playing an audio CD 373
Playing MP3 and WMA discs 377
Playing DVD video/audio (with DVD player) 381
Playing a video CD (with DVD player) 395
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information 398
Listening to Bluetooth® audio 408
Listening to a USB memory/iPod 416
Optimal use of the audio/video system 426
Using the AUX port 428
Using the steering wheel audio switches 429

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Rear seat entertainment system features 433
Using the radio 441
Using the DVD player 442
Playing an audio CD/CD text 443
Playing WMA/MP3 discs 444
Playing DVD video/audio 445
Playing a video CD 455
DVD player and DVD video disc information 459
Using the video mode 461
Changing other settings 463

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 465
Using a Bluetooth® phone 471
Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone) 485

3-6. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 514
• Interior lights 515
• Personal lights 516
• Luggage compartment light 517

3-7. Using the storage features

List of storage features 518
• Glove box 519
• Console box 520
• Overhead console 521
• Cup holders 522
• Bottle holders 523
• Auxiliary boxes 524

3-8. Other interior features

Cool box 526
Sun visors 528
Vanity mirrors 529
Ashtrays 530
Cigarette lighters 531
Power outlets 532
Heated steering wheel 534
Climate control seats/seat heaters 536
Armrest 539
Floor mats 540
Luggage compartment features 542
Garage door opener 544
Safety Connect 550

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 558
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 561

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 564
General maintenance 567
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 570

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 571
Hood 575
Engine compartment 576
Tires 593
Tire inflation pressure 602
Wheels 606
Air conditioning filter 608
Electronic key battery 611
Checking and replacing fuses 613
Light bulbs 630

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 642
If your vehicle needs to be towed 643
If you think something is wrong 649
Fuel pump shut off system 650
Event data recorder 651

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 653
If a warning message is displayed 664
If you have a flat tire 667
If the engine will not start 681
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 683
If you lose your keys 684
If you cannot operate back door opener 685
If the electronic key does not operate properly 686
If the battery is discharged 689
If your vehicle overheats 692
If the vehicle becomes stuck 695
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 696

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 698
Fuel information 708
Tire information 711

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 722

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 732

7 For owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 734
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 735
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 737

Index

Abbreviation list 748

Alphabetical index 750

What to do if 760

Exterior


Front side marker light P. 194
Moon roof P. 110
Windshield wipers P. 199
Outside rear view mirrors P. 104
Hood P. 575
Headlights (low beam) P. 194
Front turn signal lights P. 181
Fog lights P. 198
Parking lights P. 194
Headlights (high beam) and daytime running lights P. 194, 196



Back door P. 54

Rear window defogger P. 353

Rear window wiper P. 202

Tail lights P. 194

Roof luggage carrier * P. 284

Fuel filler door P. 113

Side doors P. 49

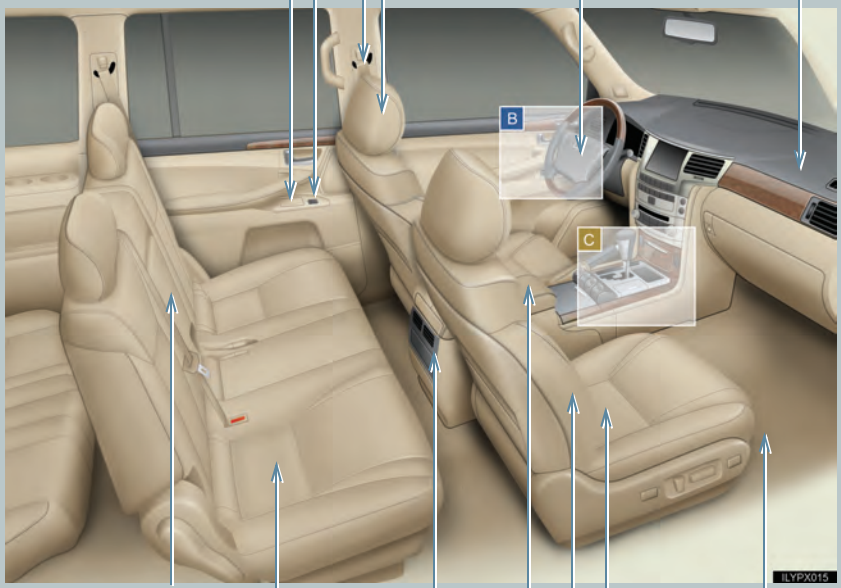
Tires
- Rotation P. 593
- Replacement P. 667
- Inflation pressure P. 602
- Information P. 711

License plate lights P. 194

Rear turn signal lights P. 181

Rear side marker light P. 194

*: If equipped



Head restraints P. 87

Seat belts P. 91

Power window switches P. 107

SRS driver airbag P. 123

SRS front passenger airbag P. 123

Ashtray P. 530

Armrest P. 539

Rear seats P. 66

Rear air conditioning controls P. 349

Floor mat P. 540

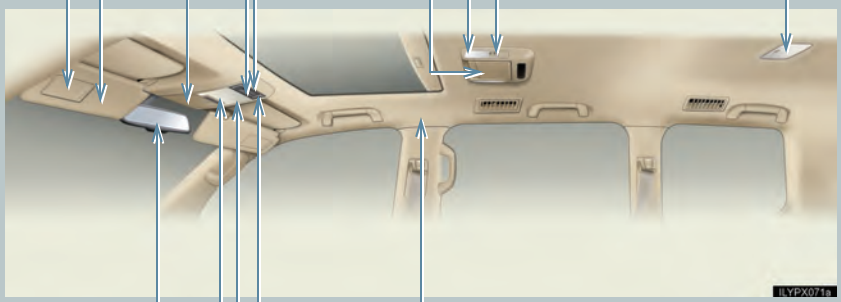
Front seats P. 64

SRS side airbags P. 123

Console box P. 520

Cool box * P. 526

A



Vanity mirrors P. 529

Sun visors P. 528

Overhead console P. 521

"SOS" button * P. 550

Garage door opener switches P. 544

Rear seat entertainment system * P. 433

Interior light P. 515

Personal lights P. 516

Interior light P. 515

SRS curtain shield airbags P. 123

Moon roof switch P. 110

Personal lights P. 516

Interior light P. 515

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror P. 102

*: If equipped

B

Driving position memory switches P. 83

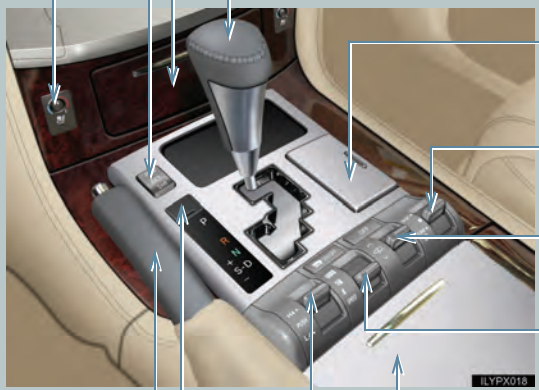


Door lock switch P. 49

Power window switches P. 107

Window lock switch P. 107

C



Climate control seats/seat heaters * P. 536

ECT switch P. 177

Ashtray P. 530

Cigarette lighter P. 531

Shift lever P. 176

AUX port P. 428

USB port P. 416

Power outlet P. 532

Damping mode select switch P. 257

Height select/height control switches P. 246

Crawl Control switch P. 263

Cup holders P. 522

Four-wheel drive control switch P. 258

Shift lock override button P. 683

Parking brake lever P. 182

*: If equipped

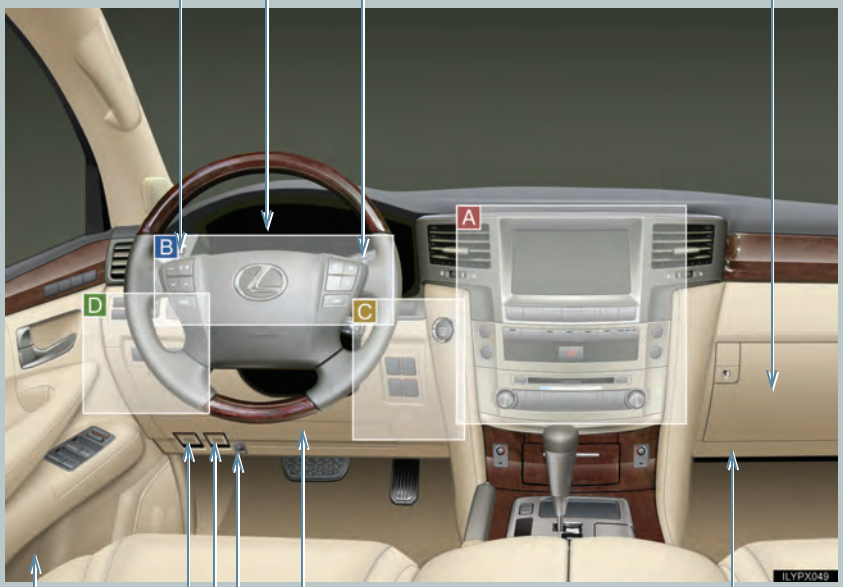
Instrument panel

Headlight switch P. 194
Turn signal lever P. 181
Fog light switch P. 198

Gauges and meters P. 184
Multi-information display P. 191

Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 199
Rear window wiper and washer switch P. 202

Glove box P. 519



SRS knee airbags P. 123

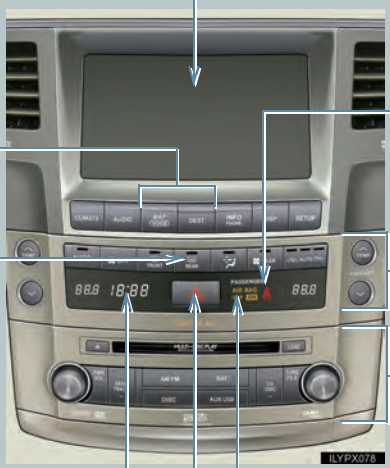
Tire pressure warning reset switch P. 595

Hood opener P. 575

Fuel filler door opener P. 113

Bottle holder P. 523

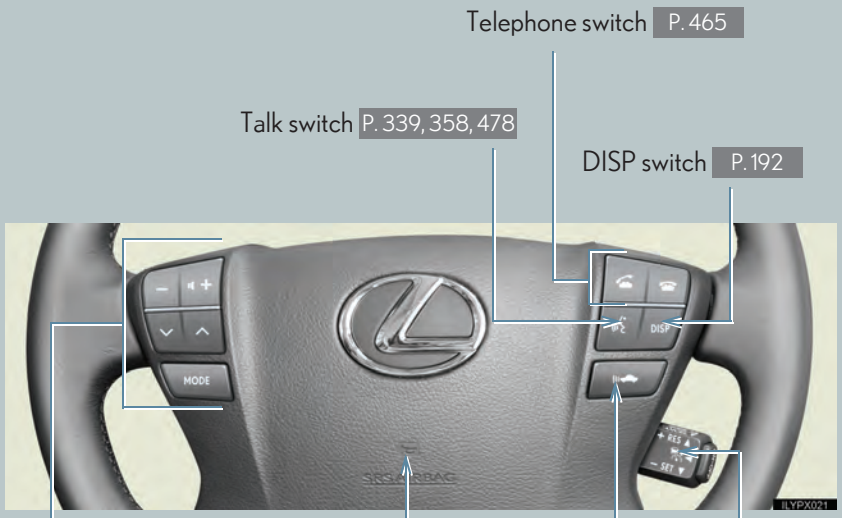
A



*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

B

▶ Type A


Telephone switch P. 465
Talk switch P. 339, 358, 478
DISP switch P. 192
MODE
DISP
Distance switch P. 212
Horn P. 183
Cruise control switch P. 209
Audio remote control switches P. 429

B

▶ Type B



Telephone switch P. 465

DISP switch P. 192

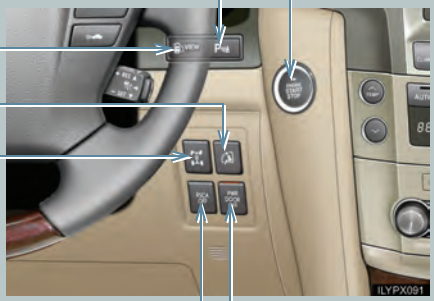
Talk switch P. 339, 358, 478

Horn P. 183

Cruise control switch P. 205

Audio remote control switches P. 429

C



Engine (ignition) switch P. 172

Intuitive parking assist switch * P. 224

VIEW switch * P. 236

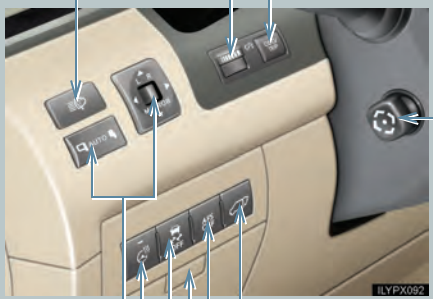
Easy access mode switch P. 249

Center differential lock/unlock switch P. 258

Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch P. 136

Power back door off switch P. 55

D



Headlight cleaner switch * P. 204

Instrument panel light control P. 185

Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button P. 185

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 100

Power back door switch P. 55

AFS OFF switch P. 195

Auxiliary box P. 524

VSC OFF switch P. 269

Heated steering wheel switch * P. 534

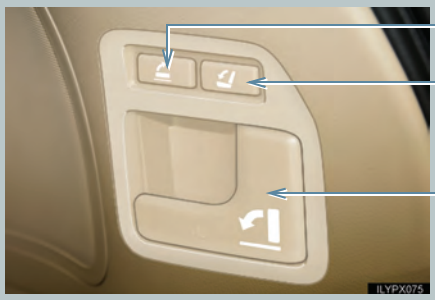
Outside rear view mirror control switches P. 104

*: If equipped


Head restraint angle lever P. 88
Seatback handles P. 72
A
ILYPX055
Power outlet P. 532
Seatback angle lever P. 66
Warning reflector holder P. 542
Tools P. 667

A

▶ With manual switches



Third seat tumbling switch P. 78

Third seat table mode switch P. 78

Third seat lock release lever P. 78

▶ With automatic switches



Third seat return switch P. 71

Third seat tumbling switch P. 71

Third seat table mode switch P. 71

Luggage compartment light P. 517

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

The installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of a mobile two-way radio system.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

⚠ CAUTION

General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

General precautions regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

⚠ CAUTION

This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

⚠ NOTICE

This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Symbols used in illustrations

Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



Arrows indicating operations

➡ Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

⇨ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

1-1. Key information
Keys 28

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Smart access system with push-button start 33
Wireless remote control 46
Side doors 49
Back door 54

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)
Front seats 64
Rear seats 66
Driving position memory system 83
Head restraints 87
Seat belts 91
Steering wheel 100
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 102
Outside rear view mirrors 104

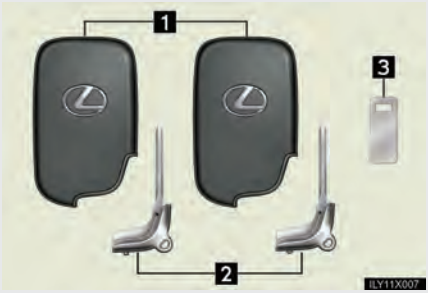
1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 107
Moon roof 110

1-5. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap 113

1-6. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 116
Alarm 118

1-7. Safety information
Correct driving posture 121
SRS airbags 123
Front passenger occupant classification system 137
Child restraint systems 143
Installing child restraints 148

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



1 Electronic keys
- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 33)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 46)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

Card key (if equipped)



1 Electronic key

Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 33)

2 Mechanical keys

Using the mechanical key



Take out the mechanical key.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a look cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 686)

Card key

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only in an emergency, such as when the key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.



- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it inside while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.
- The card key is not waterproof.

When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 519)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a key is lost, a new mechanical key can be made by your Lexus dealer, using the key number plate. (→P. 684)

When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent key damage

Observe the following:

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in a ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not place the key near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

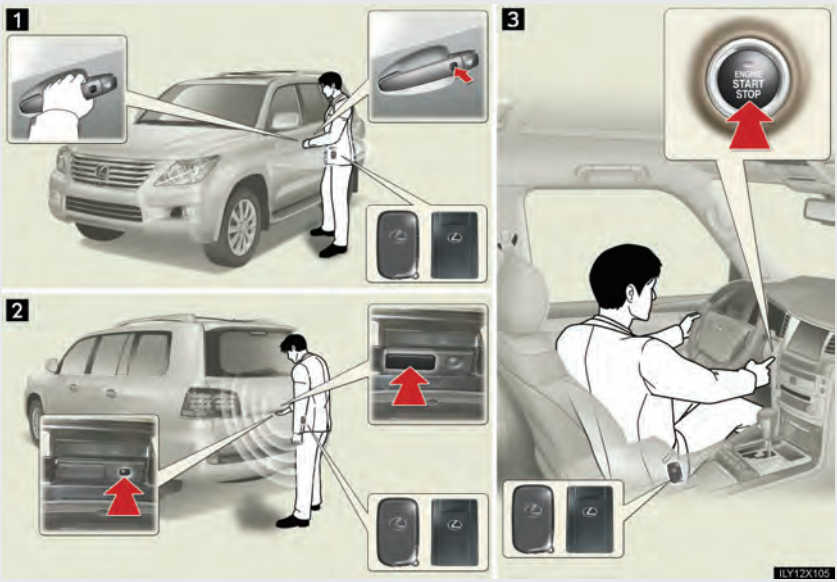
⚠ NOTICE

Precautions for handling the card keys

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key to the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals.
  (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp it and pull.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins or keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp objects, such as a tip of mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinners or benzene.

Smart access system with push-button start

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket.
(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



1 Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 34)
2 Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 34)
3 Starts and stops the engine (→P. 172)

Unlocking and locking the doors

▶ Side door handle



Grip the handle to unlock the doors.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.



Press the lock button to lock the doors.

Pressing and holding the button closes the windows and moon roof. (This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.)

▶ Back door



Press the unlock button to unlock the doors.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

Lock the back door again when you leave the vehicle. The back door will not lock automatically after it has been opened and then closed.



Press the lock button to lock the doors.

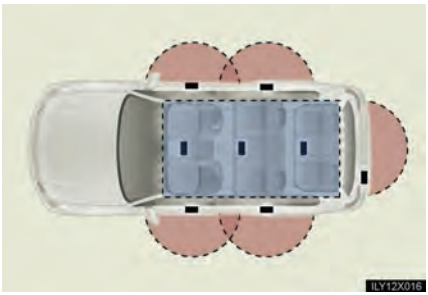
Antenna location and effective range

Antenna location



1 Antennas outside cabin
2 Antennas inside cabin
3 Antenna outside luggage compartment

Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



- When locking or unlocking the doors

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- When starting the engine or changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

Operation signals

- Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are closing.

Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly.
(Ways of coping: →P. 686)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic object
  - Card to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying or using the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

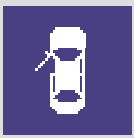
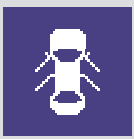
Switching the door unlock function

If it is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the key surface is turned off, press and hold for approximately 5 seconds while pressing on the key.

The setting changes each time an operation is preformed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat STEP 2.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps three times Interior: Rings once
	Hold either door handle to unlock all doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Rings once

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the setting have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)
In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 118)

Battery-saving function

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle and electronic key batteries from discharging.

- When the entry function has not been used for 2 weeks or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 3 ft. (1 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when...

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function (→P. 46) or the mechanical key. (→P. 686)

Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
  (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 41)
- The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used because the key always receives radio waves. If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control function does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 611)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Glass top ranges
  - Table lamps

■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases.
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover, floor or in the glove box when the engine is started or "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle operation may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle.

When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Perform the appropriate correction procedure described in the following table.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again
Exterior alarm sounds once for 60 seconds	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and lock the doors again
Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door is open	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings continuously*1	The "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was in ACCESSORY mode)	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door
	The "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned OFF while the driver's door was open	Close the driver's door
Interior alarm sounds continuously*1	When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, an attempt was made to open the door and exit the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in "P"	Shift the shift lever to "P" and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF
Interior and exterior alarms sound continuously*1	When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, the driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the shift lever not in "P"	Shift the shift lever to "P", turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings once*1	The electronic key has a low battery	Replace the electronic key battery
	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally	Start the engine with the electronic key present*2
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds 3 times*1	The driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned OFF	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again
	An occupant carried the electronic key outside the vehicle and closed the door while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not OFF	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle

*1: A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

*2: If the engine does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulties receiving signal from the key. (→P. 37)

■ **If the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 686)
- Starting the engine: →P. 687

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 611

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. smart access system with push-button start) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 722)

■ **Certification for the smart access system with push-button start**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID:NI4TMLF-5

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system with push-button start antennas. (→P. 36)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, smart access system with push-button start can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable smart access system with push-button start.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details for disabling smart access system with push-button start.

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle from outside the vehicle.



1 Locks all doors

2 Unlocks all doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

3 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

4 Opens/closes the back door (press and hold)

5 Sounds alarm (press and hold) (→P. 120)

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Operation signals**

- Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are opening.

■ **Operating conditions**

The wireless remote control will not operate when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in any position other than OFF.

■ **Door lock buzzer**

If a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 10 seconds if an attempt to lock the door is made. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Power back door operation**

The power back door can be opened while the vehicle is locked. (one motion)

■ **Alarm**

Using the wireless remote control to lock the door will set the alarm system.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 39

■ **Security feature**

→P. 41

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 686)
- Starting the engine: →P. 687

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 611

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 37

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)

■ **Certification for wireless remote control**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID:HYQ14AAB

FCC ID: HYQ14AEM

FCC ID: HYQ14ABB

FCC ID: HYQ13BZS

FCC ID: HYQ14ABK*

FCC ID: HYQ14ABS*

FCC ID: HYQ13CZA*

*: For U.S. mainland only

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

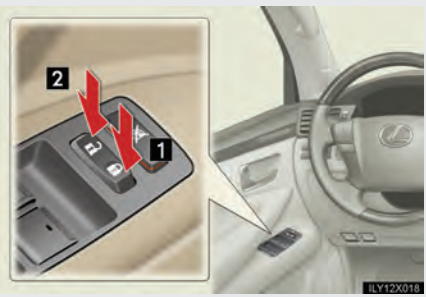
Entry function

→P. 34

Wireless remote control

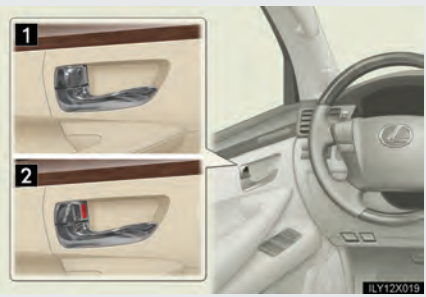
→P. 46

Door lock switch



1 Locks all doors
2 Unlocks all doors

Inside lock button



1 Locks the door
2 Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handles even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

Locking the driver's door from the outside without a key

STEP 1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

STEP 2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

Depending on the position of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

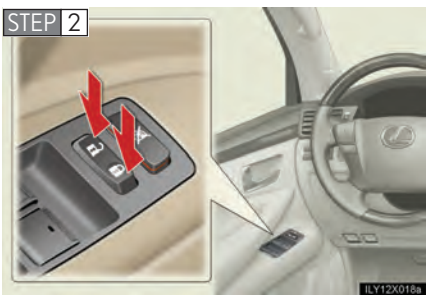
Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of "P" locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

Setting and canceling the functions

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below:

STEP 1 Close all the doors and switch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode. (Perform step 2 within 20 seconds.)

STEP 2



Shift the shift lever to "P" or "N", and press and hold the driver's door lock switch (or) for approximately 5 seconds then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set are shown as follows. Use the same procedure to cancel the function.

Function	Shift lever position	Driver's door lock switch position
Shift position linked door locking function	"P"	
Shift position linked door unlocking function		
Speed linked door locking function	"N"	
Driver's door linked door unlocking function		

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 686)

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.
  Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

Back door

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened by the following procedures.

Locking and unlocking the back door

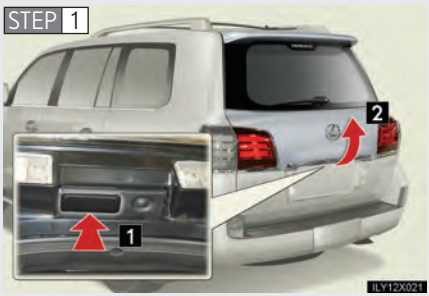
▶ Door lock switch
→P. 49

▶ Entry function
→P. 33

▶ Wireless remote control
→P. 46

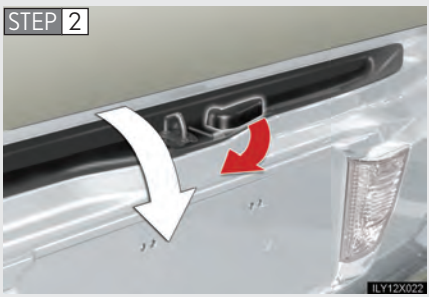
Opening the back door from outside the vehicle

STEP 1



1 Unlocks the back door
2 Raise the back door

STEP 2



Pull the handle

Opening the back door from inside the vehicle



The power back door can be opened/closed using the power back door switch or wireless remote control. (→P. 46)

Push and hold the switch to close or open. (A buzzer sounds.)

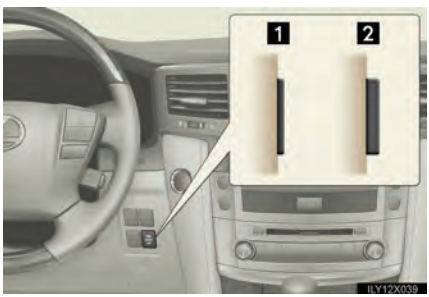
Power back door switch



Pressing the switch closes upper back door automatically. (A buzzer sounds)

Pressing the switch while the upper back door is closing opens it again.

Canceling the power back door system



Turn the main switch to disable the power back door system.

1 Inoperative

2 Operative

The back door cannot be operated even with the wireless remote control or power back door switch.

Rear step bumper



The rear step bumper is for rear end protection and easier step-up loading.

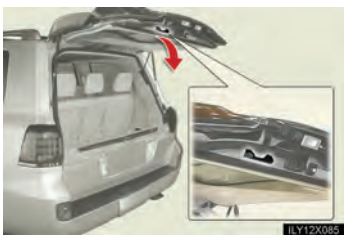
The power back door can be opened/closed when

The back door can be opened automatically when the power back door main switch is on, and the following conditions are met.

- The power back door is unlocked (except closing operation)
- The lower back door is closed (closing operation only)
- To open the power back door when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the power back door is unlocked, the vehicle speed must be lower than 1 mph (3 km/h) and the shift lever must be in "P".

When closing the back door

- Make sure that the lower side of the back door is closed before closing the upper side of the back door.



- Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.
- The buzzer sounds once when the power back door closer begins to close the lower side of the back door.

If the back door opener is inoperative

→P. 685

■ **Jam protection function**

- If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing/opening, the back door will automatically operate in the opposite direction.
- If the lower back door is opened while the upper back door is in a closing operation, it automatically opens again.

■ **When re-connecting the battery**

To enable the power back door to operate properly, perform the following:

- Unlock the back door using the door lock switch
- Close the back door manually

■ **Back door closer**

In the event that upper side and lower side of the back door are left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

■ **Fall-down protection function**

While the power back door is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the power back door from rapidly falling down.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. switch operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)

⚠ CAUTION

■ While driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not leave children alone in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to operate unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

CAUTION

Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door fall closed again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.





- The back door may fall if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.
- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not pull on the back door damper stay to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door. Such additional weight on the back door may cause the back door to fall closed again after it is opened.

■ Back door closer



- In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.
- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is cancelled.

⚠ CAUTION

Power back door

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door main switch is turned off while the back door is operating during automatic operation, the back door stops operating. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close suddenly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the back door may stop opening or closing. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the back door may move abruptly.
- On an incline, the back door may fall after it opens automatically. Make sure the back door is fully open and secure.
- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the back door has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped back door may suddenly fall, causing an accident.
  - When the back door contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to the IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door. The power back door may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the back door may fall closed again it is opened.
- In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to turn off the power back door main switch. Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

■ Jam protection function

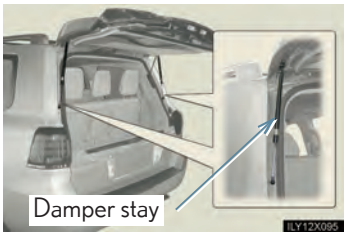
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

NOTICE

Back door damper stays

The back door is equipped with damper stays that hold the back door in place. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

To prevent back door closer malfunction

Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating.

To prevent damage to the power back door

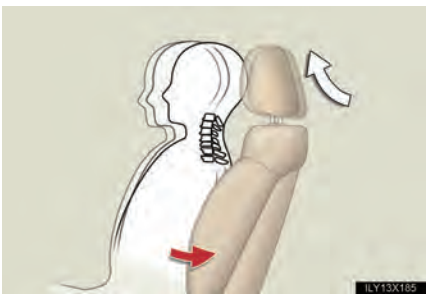
- Make sure that there is no ice between the back door and frame that would prevent movement of the back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors (installed on the right and left edges of the power back door) with a knife or other sharp object. If the sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not operate in automatic operation.

Front seats



1 Seat position fore/aft control switch
2 Seatback angle control switch
3 Seat cushion (front) angle control switch
4 Vertical height control switch
5 Lumber support control switch
6 Seat cushion length adjustment switch (driver's side only)

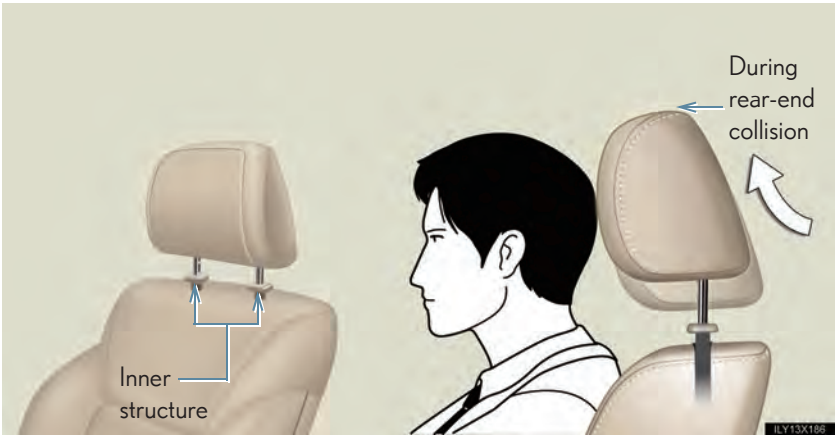
Active head restraint



When the occupant's lower back presses against the seatback during a rear-end collision, the head restraint moves slightly forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash on the seat occupant.

Active head restraint

Even small forces applied to the seatback may cause the head restraint to move. Pushing up a locked head restraint forcibly may make the inner structure of the head restraint appear. This does not indicate a problem.



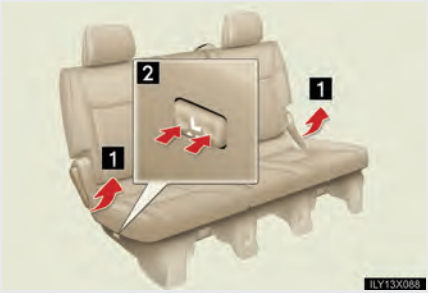
CAUTION

Seat adjustment

- Be careful that the seat does not hit passengers or luggage.
- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
  If the seat is too reclined, during an accident the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.
  Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Rear seats

▶ Second seat



1 Seatback angle adjustment lever

2 Seat position adjustment switch

▶ Third seat

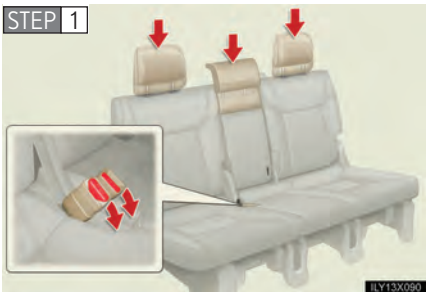


Tumbling the second seats and third seat entry

For easy access to the third seat, perform STEP 1 in "Tumbling the second seats" (→P. 68).

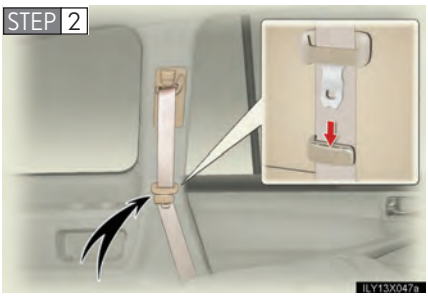
Before tumbling the second seats

STEP 1



Stow the seat belt buckles and lower the head restraints to the lowest position.

STEP 2



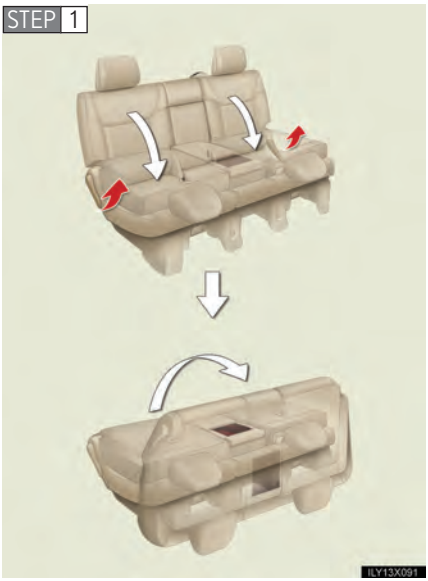
Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.

Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.

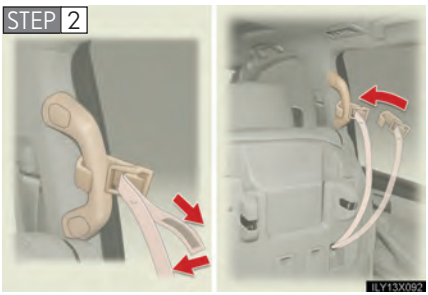
Tumbling the second seats

STEP 1



Fold down the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever, and swing the whole seat up and forward.

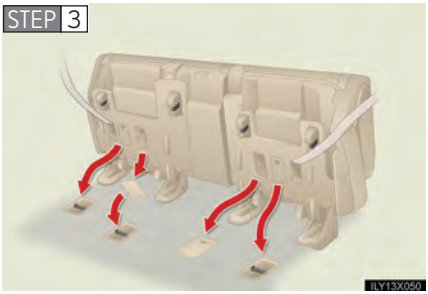
STEP 2



Hook the holding strap to the assist grip and secure the seat by pulling its free end.

When returning the second seat to its original position, stow the holding strap.

STEP 3

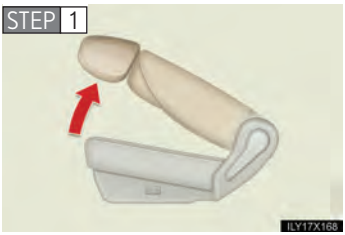


Remove the seat hook covers from the back of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.

When returning the second seat to its original position, remove the seat hook covers from the floor and install them in the back of the seat cushion.

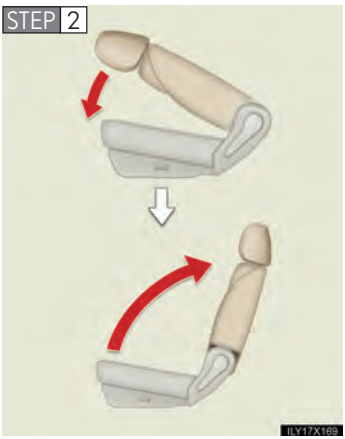
If you cannot raise the left side seatback

STEP 1



Lift the seatback until it stops.

STEP 2

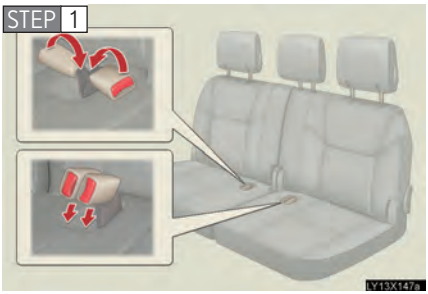


Lower the seatback a little then lift it again.

Folding the third seats (Automatic type)

Before folding the third seats

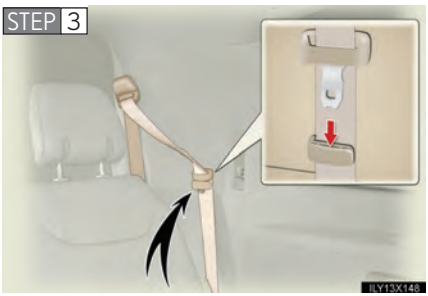
STEP 1



Stow the seat belts buckles.

STEP 2 Stow the center head restraint in the seatback. (→P. 90)

STEP 3



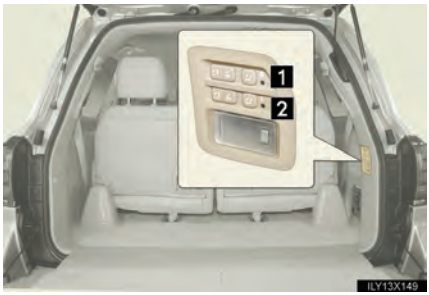
Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.

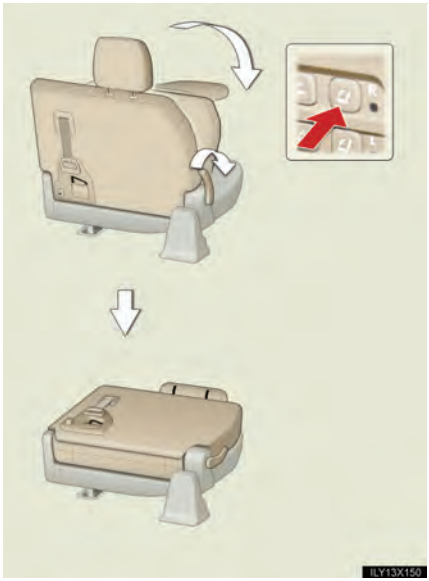
Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.

STEP 4 Stow the center seat belt tabs in the cover set in the roof. (→P. 93)

Folding down the third seatback



1 For right side
2 For left side

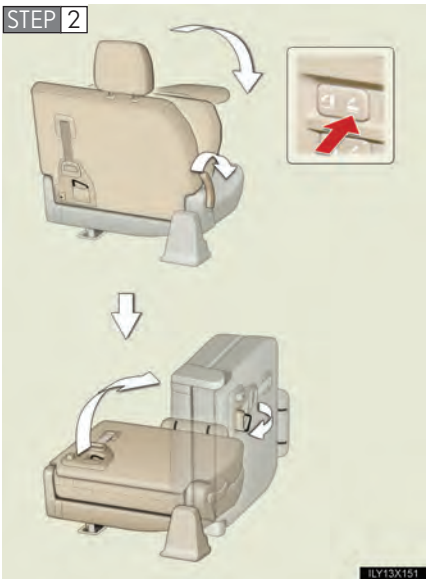


The seat will automatically fold when the switch is pressed.

Folding up the third seats

STEP 1 Perform following steps in “Before folding the third seats”. (→P. 70)

STEP 2

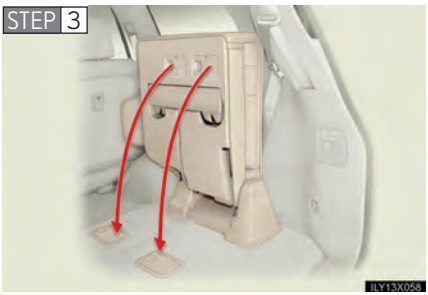


If the switch is pressed and held, the seat will automatically fold and lift sideward. (The buzzer sounds twice when the seat is about to lift.)

If the switch is released while the seat is lifting sideward, operation will stop and a buzzer will sound continuously.

Before operating, make sure that the handle on the rear of the seat-back is secure.

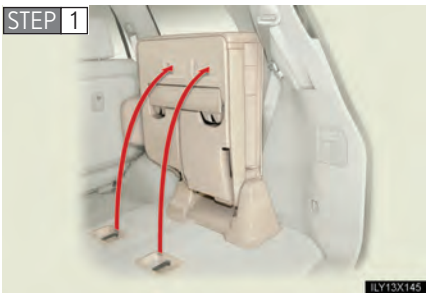
STEP 3



Remove the seat hook covers from the underside of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.

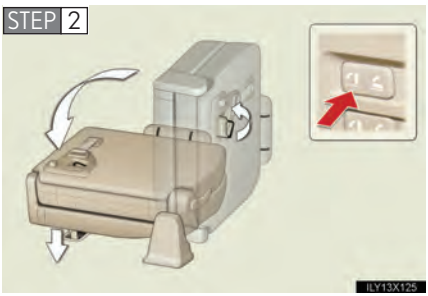
Returning the third seats

STEP 1



Remove the seat hook covers from the floor and install them into the underside of the seat cushion.

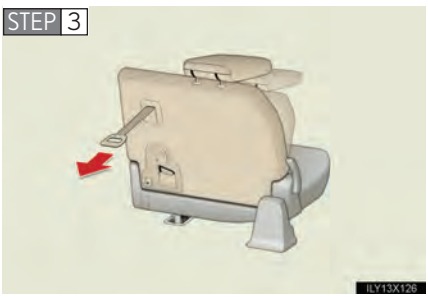
STEP 2



If the switch is held down the seat will automatically return to the folding position. (Buzzer sounds twice)

If the switch is released while returning to the folding position, operation will stop and a buzzer will sound continuously.

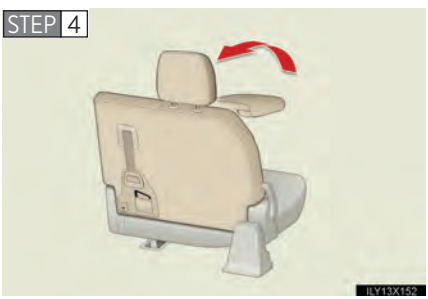
STEP 3



Pull the handle and raise the seatbacks.

Fix the handle securely in its original position after use.

STEP 4



Raise the head restraints.

■ **Alarms and indicators**

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sound.

Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light on*	Shift lever is not in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch is in the ignition on mode. Stop the switch operation during the automatic third seat is in motion.	Move the shift lever in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch in ignition on mode. Return the third seat from a halfway position to tumbling position or the original position with the third seat return switch or third seat tumbling switch.
Indicator light flashes*	The seat movement is stopped in a half way when the back door is opened.	

Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light flashes*	Automatic tumbling or return operation is stopped because of a system problem.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	The seat is not moved to the table mode from the original position after 10 seconds the tumbling switch is pressed.	Check something is caught between the seat cushion and seatback. If nothing is caught, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light blinks slowly*	Automatic closing operation is stopped because of a system problem.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

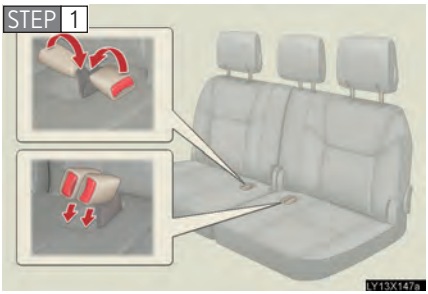
Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Indicator light flashes	Any of the tumbling or return switch is pushed when shift lever is not in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch is in the ignition on mode.	Move the shift lever in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch in ignition on mode.
Indicator light flashes 3 times	Table mode switch is pushed when shift lever is not in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch is in the ignition on mode.	

*: A warning will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

Folding the third seats (Manual type)

Before folding the third seats

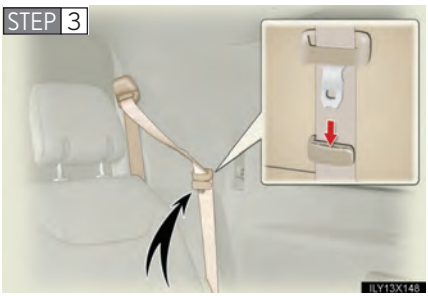
STEP 1



Stow the seat belts buckles.

STEP 2 Stow the center head restraint in the seatback.(→P. 90)

STEP 3



Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

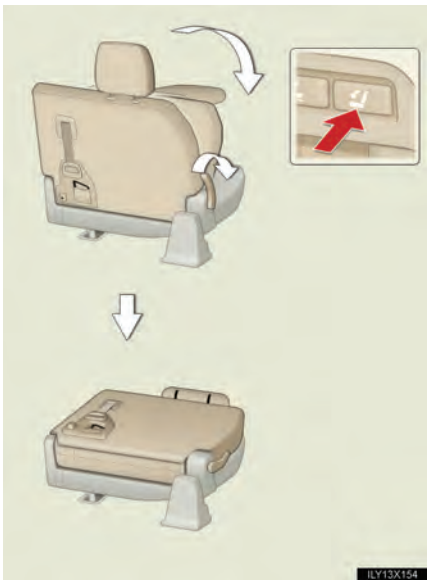
This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.

Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.

STEP 4 Stow the center seat belt tabs in the cover set in the roof. (→P. 93)

Folding down the third seatback



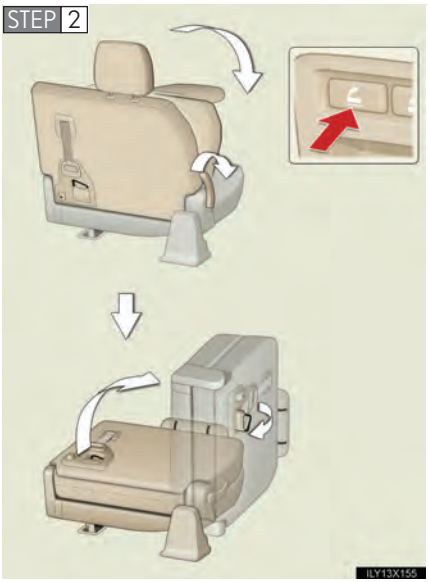


The seat will automatically fold when the switch is pressed.

Folding up the third seats

STEP 1 Perform following steps in “Before folding the third seats”. (→P. 77)

STEP 2

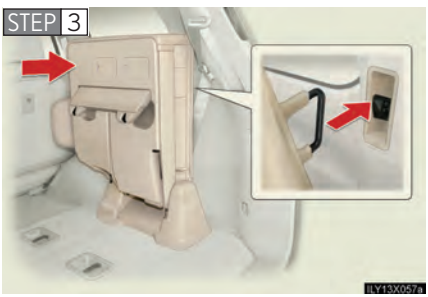


If the switch is pressed, the seat will automatically fold and lift sideward.

When the third seat tumble switch is pressed with the seat is in fold position, the seat lifts sideward.

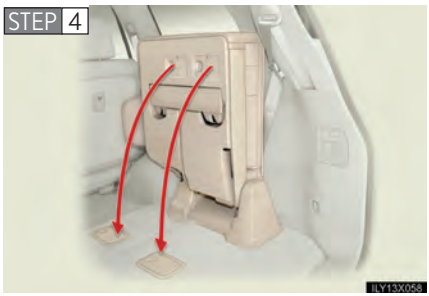
Before operating, make sure that the handle on the rear of the seat-back is secure.

STEP 3



Push and lock the seat securely.

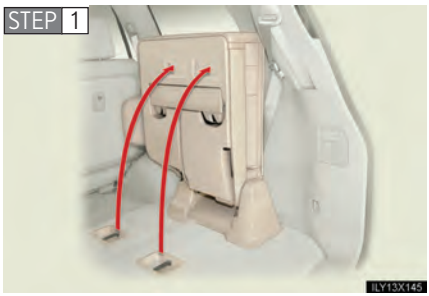
STEP 4



Remove the seat hook covers from the underside of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.

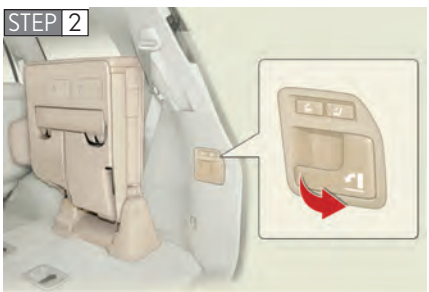
Returning the third seats

STEP 1

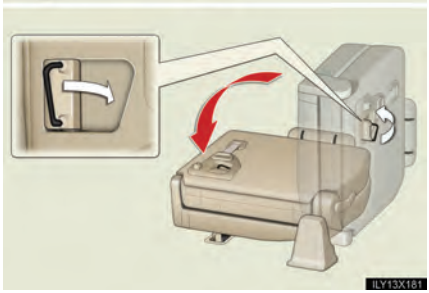


Remove the seat hook covers from the floor and install them into the underside of the seat cushion.

STEP 2

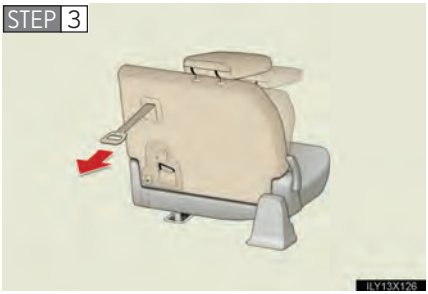


Pull the seat lock release lever and lower the seat, then lock the seat leg lock to the floor.



The seatback striker will be automatically stowed when the seat is lowered.

STEP 3



Pull the handle and raise the seatbacks.

Fix the handle securely in its original position after use.

STEP 4



Raise the head restraints.

CAUTION

Seat adjustment

Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
If the seat is too reclined, during an accident the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

When the seatback is folded

- Do not sit on or place anything on the seatback while driving.
- Be sure to install the seat hook covers on the seat hooks, or you may get burned when they become hot.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When returning the seatbacks to their original position

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Be careful not to get your hands or feet pinched in the seat.
- Make sure the seats are securely locked. Failure to do so will prevent the seat belt from operating properly.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught under the seat.
- Arrange the seat belts in the proper positions for ready use.

■ Avoiding damage to seat components

Do not hang or attach anything on the seatback striker.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Before tumbling, folding up the seats

The seat belts and buckles must be stowed.

■ After returning the third seat

Make sure that the handle on the rear of the seatback has been secured.

Driving position memory system

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be entered into the computer's memory and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.
Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

STEP 3



While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press and hold button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2



Press button "1", "2" or "3" to recall the desired position.

Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

▶ Using the wireless remote control

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF after closing the driver's door.

STEP 2



While pressing the desired button ("1", "2" or "3"), press on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, open and close a door once after a driving position has been recorded. (If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

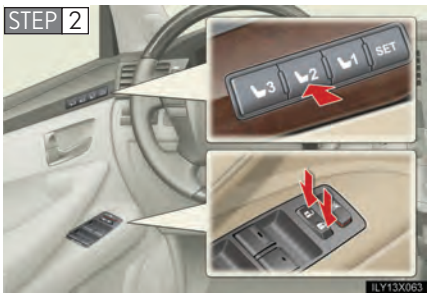
In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 118)

▶ Using the door lock switch

Carry only the key (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF after closing the driver's door.

STEP 2



While pressing the desired button ("1", "2" or "3"), press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch (either the driver or passenger side) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the enter function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF after closing the driver's door.

STEP 2 Using the wireless remote control: While pressing "SET" button, press button on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

Using the door lock switch: While pressing "SET" button, press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch until the signal beeps.

■ **Retained accessory power**

- Each memorized position (except for the steering wheel position) can be activated within 3 minutes after the driver's door is opened, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off.
- Each memorized position (except for the steering wheel position) can be activated within 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off.

■ **To cancel seat position recall**

Perform any one of the following operations.

- Press the "SET" button
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall)
- Adjust the steering wheel using the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall)

■ **If the battery is disconnected**

The memorized positions must be reset because the computer's memory is erased when the battery is disconnected.

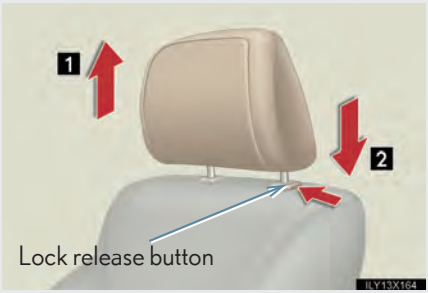
⚠ CAUTION

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

▶ Front seats



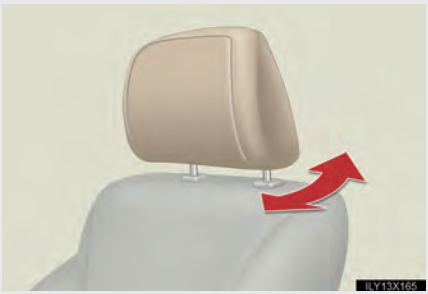
Vertical adjustment

1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

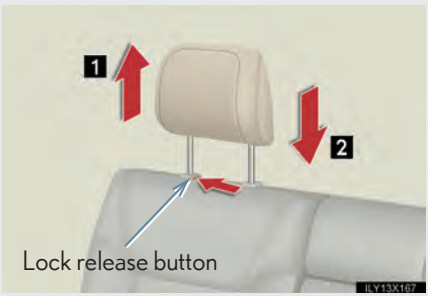
2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



Angle adjustment

▶ Second seats



Vertical adjustment

1 Up

2 Down

Push the head restraint up or down while pressing the lock release button.

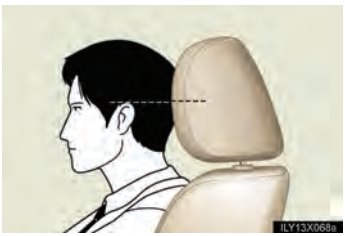
▶ Third outboard seats



To fold

Pull the head restraint angle lever to fold the head restraint.

■ **Adjusting the height of the head restraints**



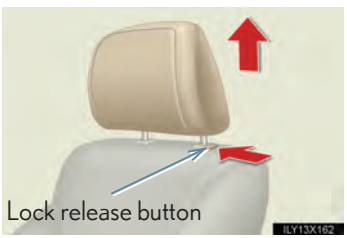
Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

■ **Adjusting the second center seat head restraint**

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

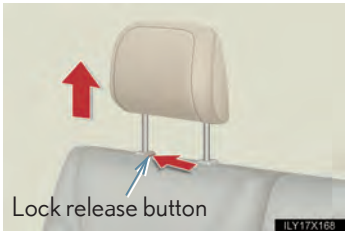
■ **Removing the head restraints**

▶ Front seats



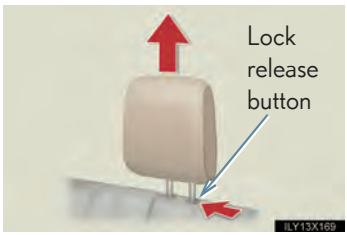
Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

▶ Second seats



Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

▶ Third center seat



Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

▶ Third outside seats

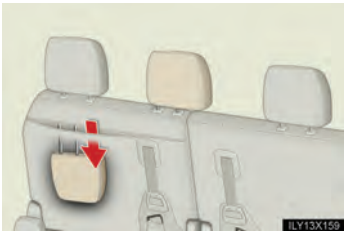
The head restraint cannot be removed.

■ **Installing the head restraints (except third outboard seats)**

STEP 1 Align the head restraint with the installation holes.

STEP 2 Push down the head restraint to the lock position.

When not using the third center seat head restraint



Open the zipper on the back of the third seat and stow the head restraint inside.

CAUTION

Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Seat belts

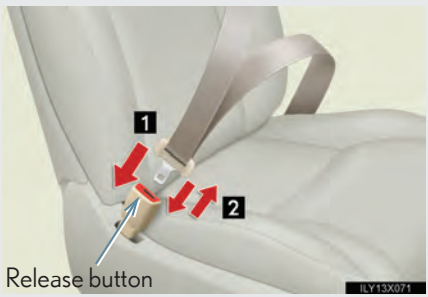
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1 Fastening the belt

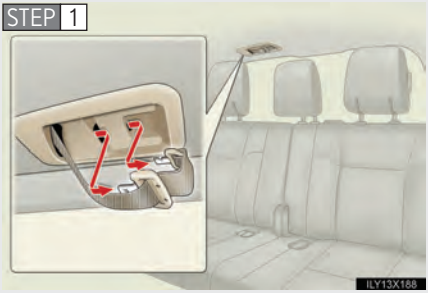
Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

2 Releasing the belt

Press the release button.

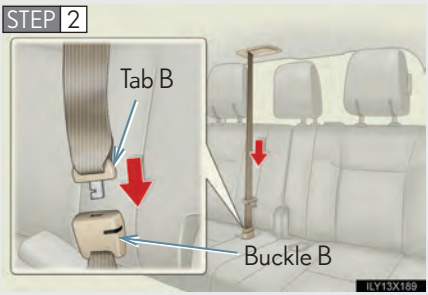
Fastening and releasing the third center seat belt

STEP 1



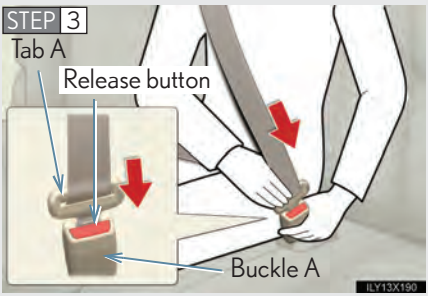
Pull out the tab

STEP 2



Push tab B into buckle B until a clicking sound is heard

STEP 3

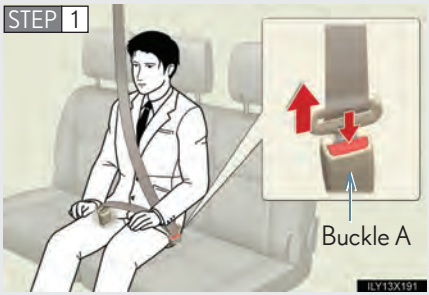


Push tab A into buckle A until a clicking sound is heard

To release, push the release button on buckle A.

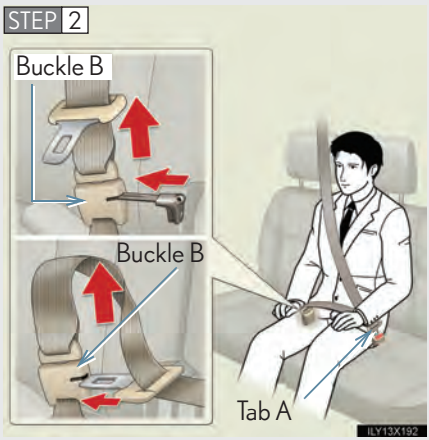
Releasing and storing the third center seat belt

STEP 1



Push the release button on buckle A

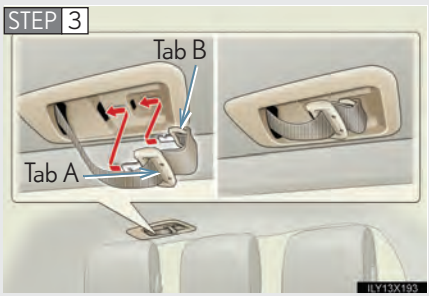
STEP 2



Push either the mechanical key or tab A into buckle B

When releasing and storing the seat belt, hold the belt while winding it back gently.

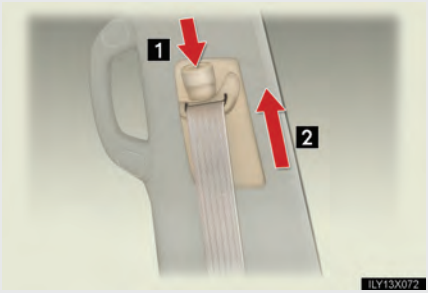
STEP 3



Put tabs A and B together and stow them in the holder

To reattach the seat belt, reverse the above procedure, pulling out the tabs and inserting tab B into buckle B.

Adjusting the height of the belt (front and second outboard seats)



1 Down

2 Up

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

Seat belt pretensioners (front and second outboard seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision or a vehicle rollover.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt, thus enhancing the effectiveness of the seat belt pretensioner in a crash.

The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 274)

Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a second seat passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 148)

Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 91)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only a pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision.

People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

When the third center seat belt cannot be extended



Put your fingers between the seat belt and the holder.

Pull the seat belt forcefully in the direction of the arrow and then release it to unlock.

Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 143)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 91 regarding seat belt usage.

Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

Seat belt extender



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 94)

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Seat belt pretensioners

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

■ When using the third center seat belt



Do not use the third center seat belt with either buckle released. Fastening only one of the buckles may result in death or serious injury in case of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision.

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belt cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender, if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system, because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

■ Precaution for pre-collision seat belts

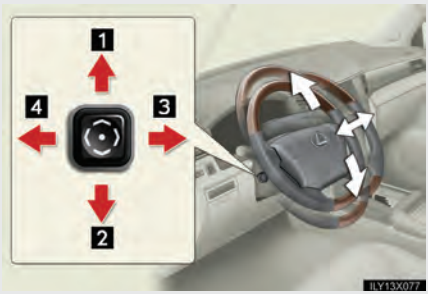
Do not rely on the pre-collision system to avoid accidents. Always pay attention to the surrounding conditions, and drive safely and responsibly.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When using a seat belt extender

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.
This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.



1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

Auto tilt away



When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Switching to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 83)

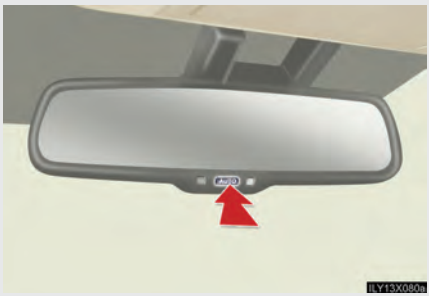
CAUTION

While driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

In automatic mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduce the reflected light.

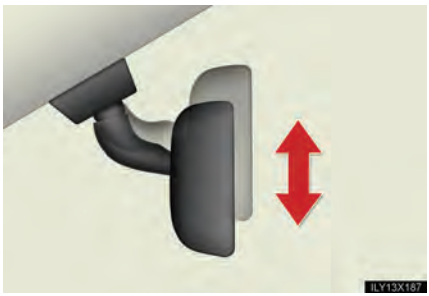


Turns auto mode on/off

The indicator comes on when auto mode is turned on.

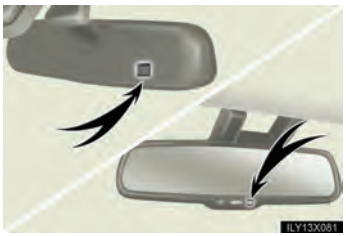
The mirror will revert to the auto mode each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Adjusting the height of the rear view mirror



Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

To prevent sensor error



To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

CAUTION

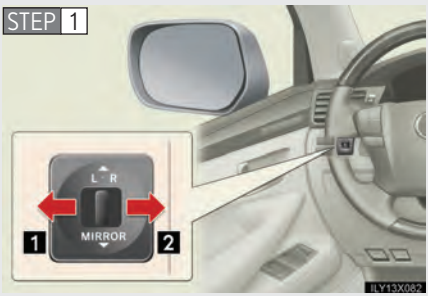
While driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

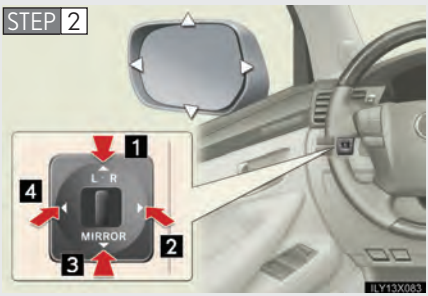
STEP 1



Select a mirror to adjust

1 Left
2 Right

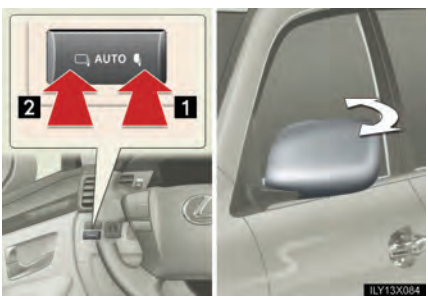
STEP 2



Adjust the mirror

1 Up
2 Right
3 Down
4 Left

Folding back the mirrors



1 Folds the mirrors
2 Extends the mirrors

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors to automatic mode. Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

■ **When the mirrors are fogged up**

Turn on the outside rear view mirror defogger to defog the mirrors. (→P. 353)

■ **Auto anti-glare function**

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to auto mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 102)

■ **Linked mirror function when reversing**

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (between "L" and "R").

■ **Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 83)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

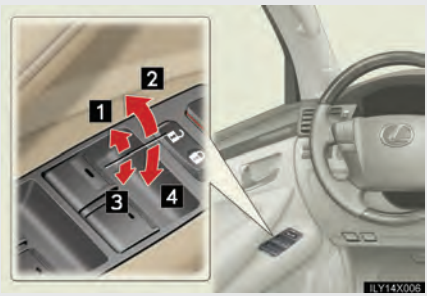
⚠ NOTICE

■ If ice should jam the mirror

Do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



1 Closing
2 One-touch closing*
3 Opening
4 One-touch opening*

*: Pressing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

The power windows can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

Door lock linked window operation

The following functions can be used if customized at your Lexus dealer.

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 686)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 46)
- The power windows can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 34)

Operating the power windows after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

When the power window does not close normally

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

STEP 1 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

STEP 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

STEP 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)

⚠ CAUTION

Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
  Closing a power window on someone can cause death or serious injury.

Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

Moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

Opening and closing



1 Open

Stops just before it is opened fully. Press the switch again to fully open.

2 Close

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

Tilt up and down



1 Tilt up

2 Tilt down

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

The following functions can be used if customized at your Lexus dealer.

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 686)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 46)
- The moon roof can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 34)

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **If the moon roof cannot be closed automatically**

Keep the switch depressed.

■ **To reduce moon roof wind noise**

Drive with the moon roof at first opened position (just before fully opened position).

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument panel when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)

⚠ CAUTION

Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their bodies in a position where they could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
  Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

Before refueling the vehicle

Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.

Opening the fuel tank cap

STEP 1



Pull the lever.

STEP 2



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

STEP 3



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Closing the fuel tank cap



When replacing the fuel tank cap, turn it until a clicking sound is heard.

After releasing your hand, the cap will turn slightly to the opposite direction.

Fuel types

Use premium unleaded gasoline. (Octane Rating 91 [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 24.5 gal. (93 L, 20.4 Imp.gal.)

⚠ CAUTION

Refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle.
Failure to do so, may result in death or serious injury.

- Touch the vehicle or some other metal surface to discharge any static electricity.
  Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap.
  In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Failure to do so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the exhaust systems to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.



The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

Engine immobilizer certification

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

⚠ NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than by using the entry function or the wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The battery is reconnected.

Setting the alarm system



Close the doors and hood, and lock all doors.
The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or the wireless remote control.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Triggering of the alarm

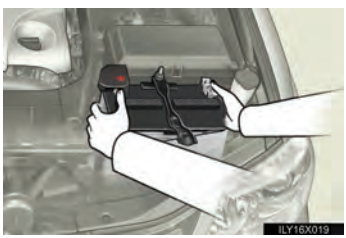
The alarm may be triggered in the following situations. (Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)



- The door is unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood.



- The battery is reconnected.

When the battery is disconnected

Be sure to cancel the alarm system.
If the battery is disconnected before canceling the alarm, the system may be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.

Panic mode



When is pressed for longer than about one second, the head lights/tail lights/emergency flashers will flash, the front and rear interior lights will come on, and an alarm will sound for about 60 seconds to deer any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the wireless remote control.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Correct driving posture

Drive with a good posture as follows:



1. Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 64)
2. Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 64)
3. Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
4. Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 100)
5. Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 87)
6. Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 91)

⚠ CAUTION

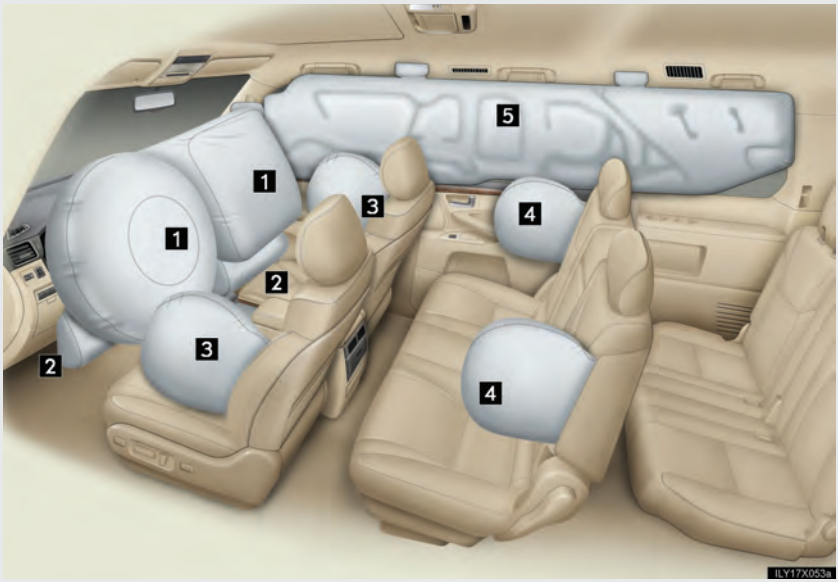
While driving

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
  If the seat is too reclined during an accident, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

Adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



▶ Front airbags

1 Driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components.

2 Knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection.

▶ Side and curtain shield airbags

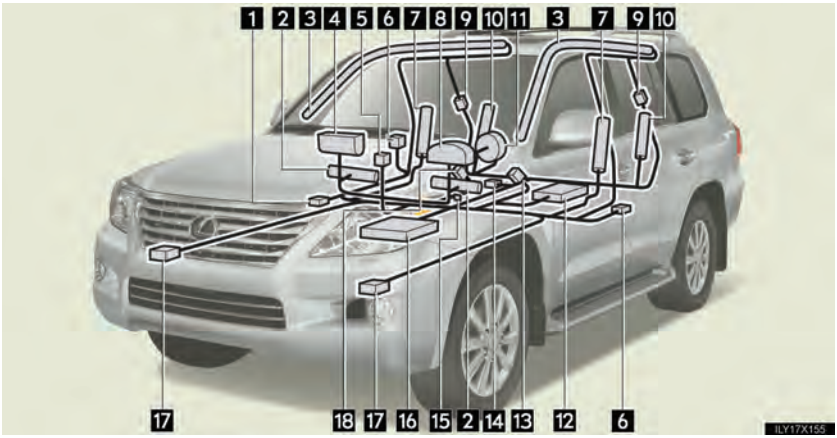
3 Side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants.

4 Side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the second outboard seat occupants.

5 Curtain shield airbags

- Can help protect primarily the head of front seat occupants.
- Can help protect primarily the head of second outboard seat occupants.
- Can help protect primarily the head of third seat occupants.

Airbag system components



1 Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU & sensors)
2 Knee airbags
3 Curtain shield airbags
4 Front passenger airbag
5 AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights
6 Side and curtain shield airbag sensors
7 Side airbags (front seats)
8 SRS warning light and "RSCA OFF" indicator light
9 Curtain shield and rear side airbag sensors
10 Side airbags (second outboard seats)
11 Driver airbag
12 Driver's seat position sensor
13 Driver's seat belt buckle switch
14 Floor sensor
15 Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch
16 Airbag sensor assembly
17 Front airbag sensors
18 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch

Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger.
The driver airbag system consists of the driver seat's position sensor etc.
The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, second seats, and parts of the front, center and rear pillars, and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- For Safety Connect subscribers, if the SRS airbags deploy or in the event of a severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 550)

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbag will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

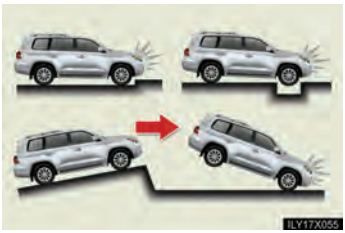
  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).
- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
- The SRS front airbags for the front passenger will not activate if there is not a passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front airbags for the front passenger may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied.

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags)**

- The SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 3300 lb. [1500 kg] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h]).
- The SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied.
- The SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of vehicle rollover.

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front, side and curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy under the situations shown in the illustration.



- The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal.
- The vehicle skids and hits curb stone.

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (front airbags)

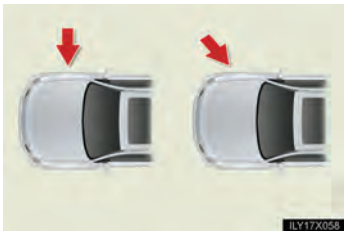
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.



- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (side airbags and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



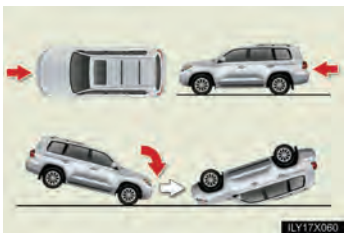
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

The SRS curtain shield airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it pitches end over end, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

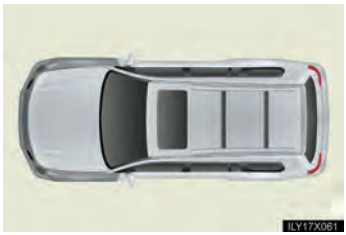


- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Pitching end over end

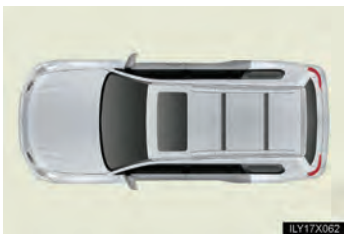
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer, as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of a door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front, center and rear pillar garnish, or roof interior containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") advises:

Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat.
  Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver's seat belt, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 143)

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, center and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions





- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.
- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front, center and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 125.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer.
The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags.
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, center and rear pillars or roof side rail.
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment.
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.).
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system.
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players.
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability.

Deactivating the curtain shield airbags in a vehicle rollover



On/off (Hold for a few seconds)

The "RSCA OFF" (roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off) indicator light turns on.
(Only when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

This switch only should be used

In a situation where the inflation is not desired (such as during extreme off road driving).

Operating conditions when the "RSCA OFF" indicator is on

- The curtain shield airbag and seat belt pretensioner will not activate in a vehicle rollover.
- The curtain shield airbag will activate in a severe side impact.

CAUTION

While normal driving

Make sure the "RSCA OFF" indicator light is not turned on. If it is left on, the curtain shield airbag will not activate in the event of an accident, which may cause death or serious injury.

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.



1 SRS warning light
2 AIR BAG OFF indicator light
3 AIR BAG ON indicator light
4 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

Adult*1

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Activated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

Child*3 or child restraint system*4

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"*5
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	Not illuminated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Deactivated

System malfunction

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.

*3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

*4: Never install a real-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A rear-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 143)

*5: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual as for installing the child restraint system properly. (→P. 148)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding front passenger occupant classification system.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the AIR BAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, the SRS airbags for the passenger may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat.
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the second seat.
- Do not let a second seat passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a second seat. This may cause the AIR BAG OFF indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the second seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the second seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the AIR BAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the second seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 148)
- Do not modify or remove the front seat.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction in the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Child restraint systems installed on the second seat should not contact the front seatbacks.

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 148)

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

▶ Rear facing–Infant seat/convertible seat



▶ Forward facing–Convertible seat



▶ Booster seat



When installing the child restraint system on the front passenger seat



When you have to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the following:

- The seatback to the most upright position
- The seat cushion to the fully rearward and highest position
- The seat belt height to the lowest position

Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belts.
- If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 91)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a child restraint system

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child, resulting in serious injury or even death.

■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Child restraint precautions

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerving or accident.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure the child restraints to the outboard second seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.

The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.

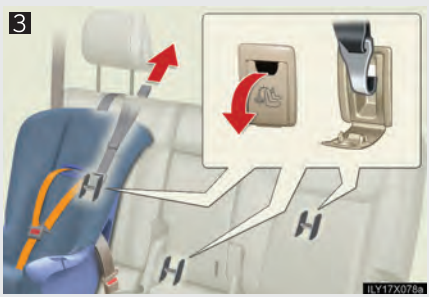


1 Child restraint LATCH anchors

LATCH anchors are provided for the outboard second seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



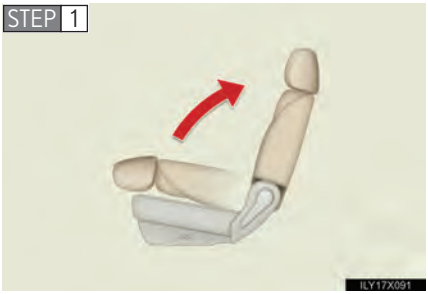
2 Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt)



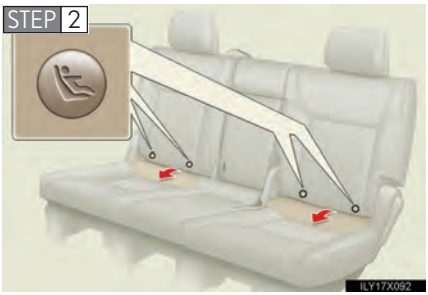
3 Anchor bracket (for top tether strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for all second seats.

Installation with LATCH system

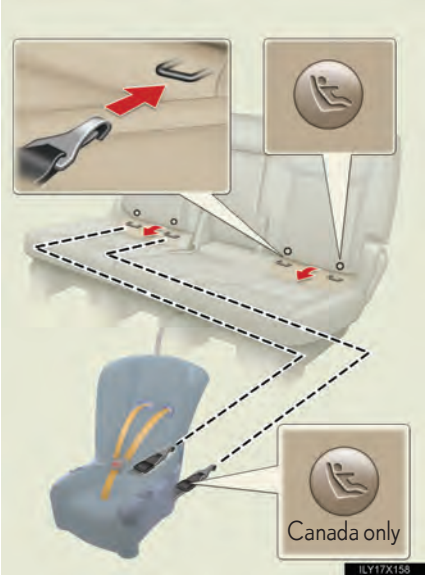


Fold the seatback forward and then adjust it as upright as possible.



Take off the covers between the seat cushion and seatback, then confirm the position of the LATCH anchors below the symbol in the seatback.

▶ Type A

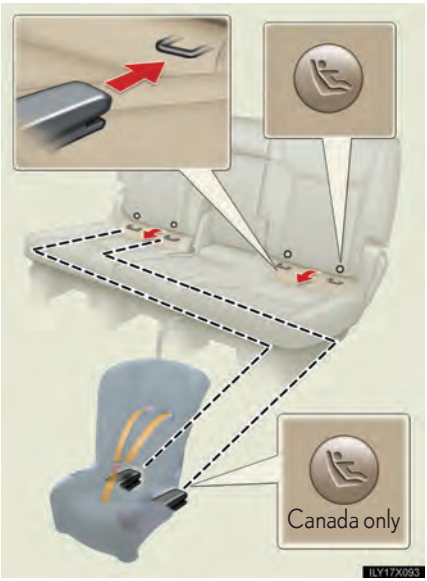


STEP 3 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 4 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

▶ Type B



STEP 3 Latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors.

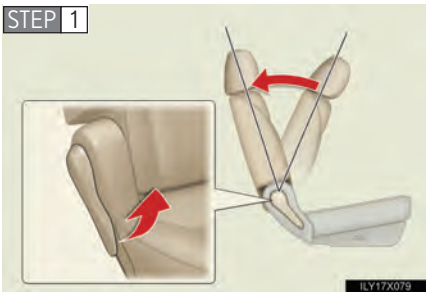
STEP 4 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

Rear-facing — Infant seat/Convertible seat

STEP 1



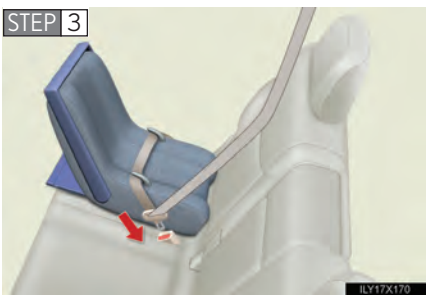
Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 66)

STEP 2



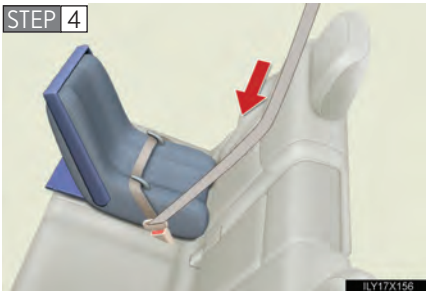
Place the child restraint system on the second seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 3



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

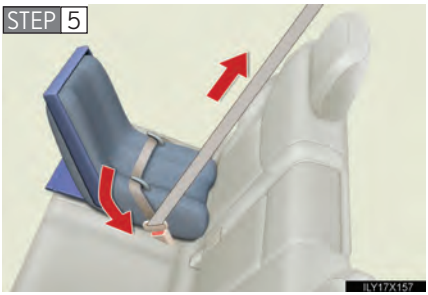
STEP 4



Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

STEP 5

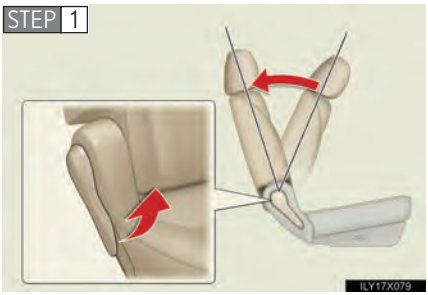


While pushing the child restraint system down into the second seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

Forward-facing — Convertible seat

STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 66)

STEP 2



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 3



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

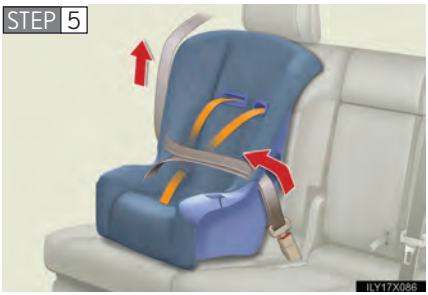
STEP 4



Fully extend the shoulder strap and then allow it to retract slightly into the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

STEP 5



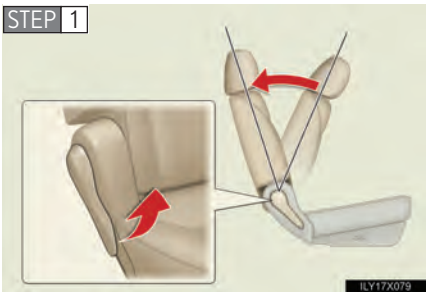
While pushing the child restraint system into the second seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

STEP 6 If the child restraint system has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 149)

Booster seat

STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position.

STEP 2



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 3



Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 91)

Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

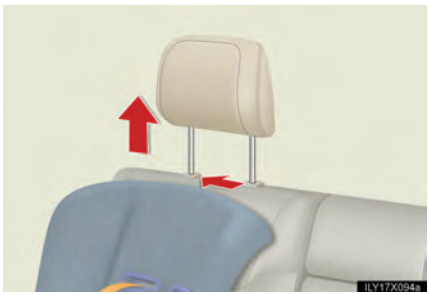


Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

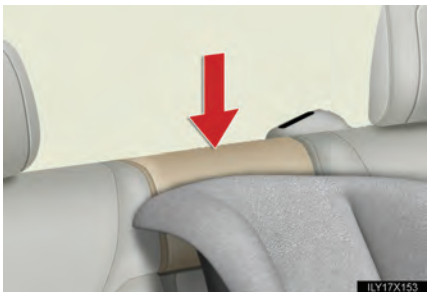
STEP 1 Secure the child restraint system using a seat belt or LATCH anchors, and do the following.

▶ Outside



Adjust the head restraint to the upmost position.

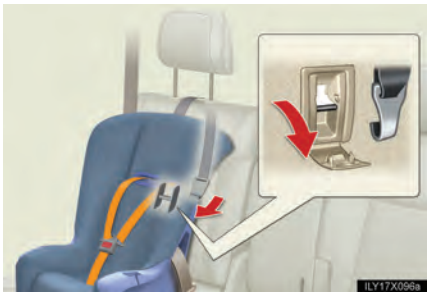
▶ Center



Lower the head restraint to the lowest position.

STEP 2 Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

▶ Outside

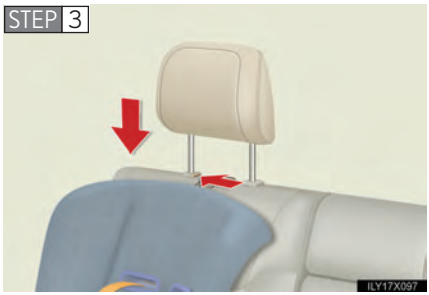


Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.

▶ Center



STEP 3



Outside only: Adjust the head restraint to the downmost position.

Laws and regulations pertaining to Anchors

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.
Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.
This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

CAUTION

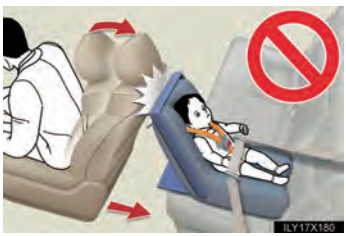
When installing a booster seat

Do not fully extend the shoulder belt to prevent the belt from going to ALR lock mode: (→P. 95)

ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.

When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand second seat.
- Child restraint system installed on the third seat should not contact the second seatbacks.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system



- Only put a forward-facing or booster child seat on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing or booster child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).
- When using the LATCH anchors for a child restraint system, move the seat as far back as possible, with the seatback close to the child restraint system.
- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child restraint system from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Do not use a seat belt extender

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

When driving 2

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 162
Engine (ignition) switch 172
Automatic transmission 176
Turn signal lever 181
Parking brake 182
Horn 183

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 184
Indicators and warning lights 187
Multi-information display 191

2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 194
Fog light switch 198
Windshield wipers and washer 199
Rear window wiper and washer 202
Headlight cleaner switch 204

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 205
Dynamic radar cruise control 209
Intuitive parking assist 224
Rear view monitor system 232
Wide view front & side monitor 236
4-Wheel AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) 246
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension) 257
Four-wheel drive system 258
Crawl Control 263
Driving assist systems 267
Pre-Collision System 274

2-5. Driving information

Off-road precautions 279
Cargo and luggage 284
Vehicle load limits 291
Winter driving tips 292
Trailer towing 297
Dinghy towing 317

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

Starting the engine (→P. 172)

Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to "D". (→P. 176)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 182)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently push the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in "D", push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to "P" or "N". (→P. 176)

Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in "D", push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 182)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to "P". (→P. 176)

When parking on a hill, if necessary, block the wheels.

STEP 4 Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch and stop the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

Starting on a steep uphill

STEP 1 Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to "D".

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 200 miles (300 km):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 500 miles (800 km):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 1000 miles (1600 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in the low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system.
This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drums are replaced.

Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding-down.

Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 700)

⚠ CAUTION

When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly, allowing you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
  The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. This may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in "R".
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the back door is closed.
  Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "P" while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "R" while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "D" while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Moving the shift lever to "N" while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when "N" is selected.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 696
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 177)

⚠ CAUTION

- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.
- If you drive through deep water over about 20 in. (500 mm) in depth, put the vehicle height in the high mode with the height select switch and then turn off the 4-Wheel AHC. Drive your vehicle at 18 mph (30 km/h) or lower speed.

⚠ CAUTION

When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than "P" or "N", the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Failure to do so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to "P", stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

  Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in "P". You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode. (→P. 258)
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ CAUTION

Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off.
Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to abnormal engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but it will require more force on the pedal than usual. Braking distance may also increase.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems: If one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer.
  Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

⚠ NOTICE

When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving. If the brake pedal is depressed while driving with the accelerator pedal depressed, driving torque may be restrained.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress accelerator and brake pedals together to hold the vehicle on a hill.

When parking the vehicle

Always put the shift lever in "P". Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering pump.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.
The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or that of the brake discs are exceeded.

NOTICE

If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 672)

When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle.

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following.

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes.

Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns green.

STEP 4



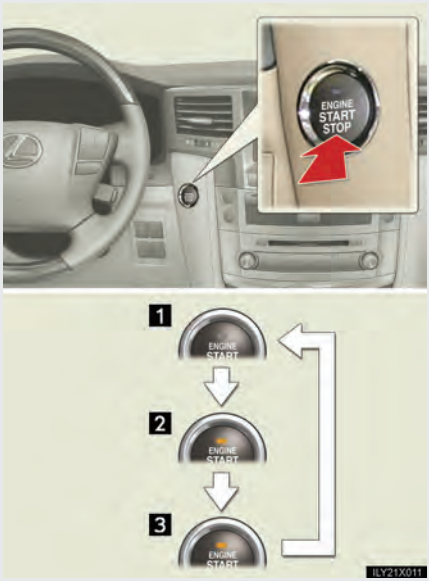
Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

The engine can be started from any "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started. The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode

Modes can be changed by pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 OFF*

Emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than "P" when turning off the engine, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to OFF.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**



The green indicator light on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 116)

■ **When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than an hour with the shift lever in "P", the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will automatically turn off.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 39

■ **When the electronic key battery is discharged**

→P. 686

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 37

■ **Note for the entry function**

→P. 40

⚠ CAUTION

When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, push and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 3 seconds.
However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods without the engine running.

When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately by your Lexus dealer.

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

Shifting the shift lever



While the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

Shift position uses

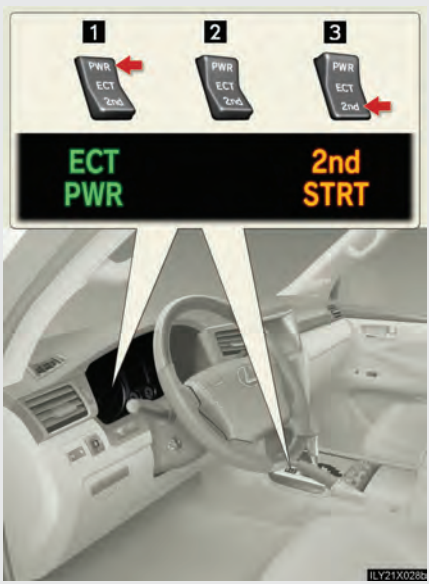
Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle or starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
S	"S" mode driving*2 (→P. 178)

*1: To improve fuel consumption and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the "D" position for normal driving.

*2: By selecting shift ranges using "S" mode, you can control engine braking forces.

Selecting a driving mode

The following patterns can be selected to suit current driving and operating conditions.



1 Power mode

For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions.

2 Normal mode

3 Second start mode

For starting on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Press "2nd" to return to normal mode.

Changing shift ranges in “S” mode

Shift the shift lever to the “S” position and operate the shift lever.



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in “S” mode is automatically set to “5” or “4” according to the vehicle’s speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to “3” or “2” if the AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the “D” position. (→P. 180)

Shift ranges and their functions

Shift range	Function
6	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 6 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
5	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 5 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
4	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 4 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
3	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 3 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
2	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 2 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
1	Setting the gear at 1.

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine revolutions will also increase.

■ **"S" mode**

When the shift range is "5" or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to "6".

■ **Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer (in the "S" mode)**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **When driving with the cruise control system**

The engine brake will not operate in the "S" mode, even when downshifting to "5" or "4". (→P. 205, 209)

■ **Second start mode automatic deactivation**

Second start mode is automatically deactivated if the engine is turned off after driving in second start mode.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"**

→P. 683

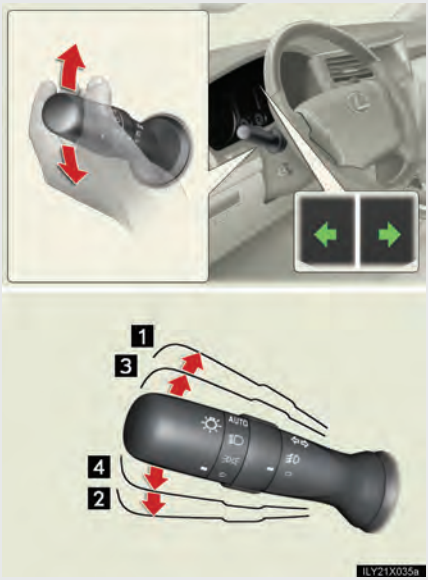
■ **If the "S" indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to "S"**

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
(In this situation, the vehicle will operate as if the shift lever is in "D".)

■ **AI-SHIFT**

The AI-SHIFT automatically shifts the gear to the optimal position according to the driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the "D" position. (Shifting the shift lever to the "S" position cancels the function.)
While in power mode, the engine speed may remain high after releasing the accelerator pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

Turn signal lever



1 Right turn

2 Left turn

3 Move and hold the lever partway to signal a lane change.

The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

4 Move and hold the lever partway to signal a lane change.

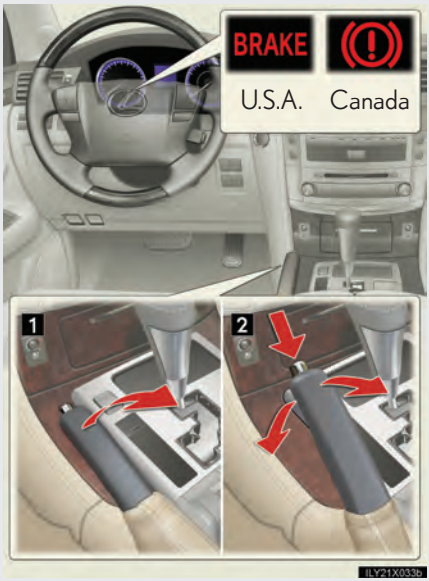
The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If the indicators flash faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.



1 Sets the parking brake

Fully set the parking brake while depressing the brake pedal.

2 Releases the parking brake

Slightly raise the lever and lower it completely while pressing the button.

Usage in winter time

See "Winter driving tips" for parking brake usage in winter time. (→P. 292)

NOTICE

Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

Horn



To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



The units used on the speedometer may differ depending on the target region.

The following gauges, meters and displays illuminate when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

1 Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

2 Engine oil pressure gauge

Displays the engine oil pressure.

3 Voltmeter

Displays the charge state.

4 Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

5 Multi-information display

→P. 191

6 Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

7 Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature.

8 Odometer and trip meter

Odometer: Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

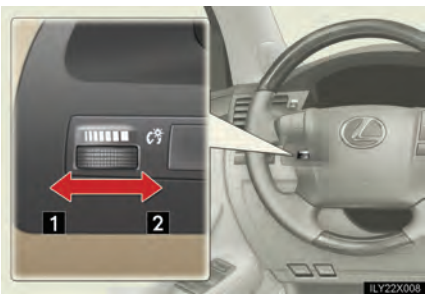
Trip meter: Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

9 Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button

Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. Pushing and holding the button will reset the trip meter when the trip meter is being displayed.

Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel light can be adjusted.



1 Darker
2 Brighter

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone ("H"). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 692)

■ While driving

- When the voltmeter indicates more than 19 V or less than 9 V, the battery may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer.
- When the engine oil pressure gauge does not work properly, immediately stop the engine and contact your Lexus dealer.

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

▶ Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

▶ Center panel



Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 181)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 195)


(U.S.A.)
Headlight indicator (→P. 194)


(Canada)
Tail light indicator (→P. 194)


Fog light indicator (→P. 198)

*1


"AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 195)



Cruise control indicator (→P. 205, 209)


(if equipped)
Intuitive parking assist indicator (→P. 224)

*1

Crawl Control indicator (→P. 263)

*1


Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off indicator (→P. 136)



"PWR" mode indicator (→P. 177)



Automatic transmission second start indicator (→P. 177)



Low speed four-wheel drive indicator light (→P. 258)


Center differential lock indicator (→P. 258)


Security indicator (→P. 116, 118)

*1

Easy access mode indicator (→P. 249)

*1, 2  Slip indicator (→P. 268)

*1 

"AIR BAG ON/OFF" indicator (→P. 137)

*1 

VSC OFF indicator (→P. 269)

*1 

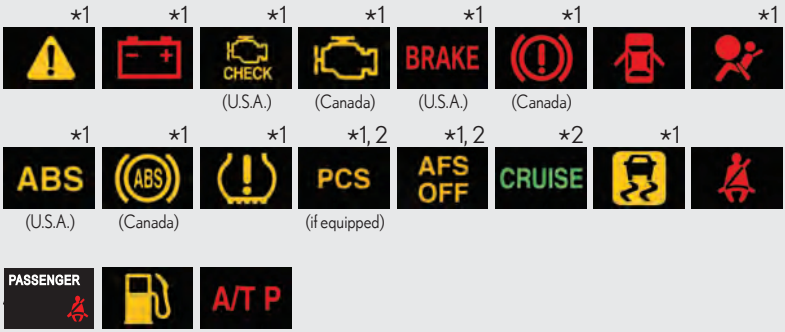
"TRAC OFF" indicator (→P. 269)

*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 653)



*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

CAUTION

If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as Multi Terrain ABS and the SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data.



- Trip information (→P. 192)

  Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising-related information.

- Intuitive parking assist display (→P. 225)

  Automatically displayed when using intuitive parking assist.

- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 209)

  Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control.

- 4-Wheel AHC display (→P. 247)

- Crawl Control display (→P. 263)

  Automatically displayed when using Crawl Control.

- Shift position and shift range (→P. 178)

- Warning messages (→P. 664)

  Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's system.

Switch the display



Display items can be switched by pressing the "DISP" switch.

Trip information

Outside temperature

Displays the outside air temperature.

The temperature range that can be displayed is from -22°F (-30°C) to 122°F (50°C).

Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

Average fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Driving range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

Average vehicle speed

Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

Driving distance

Displays the driving distance since the engine was started.

Tire inflation pressure

Displays inflation pressure of each tire. There is no correlation between the order of the displayed values and the tire positions.

It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.

System check display

After switching the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, "CHECKING" is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, the normal screen will return.

Tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using other gauges.

Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem to continue using the display.

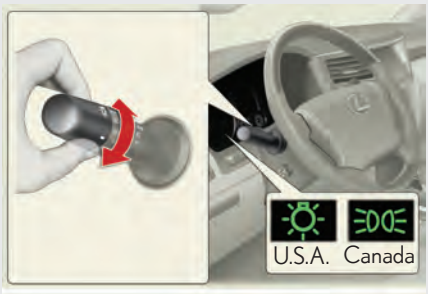
⚠ NOTICE

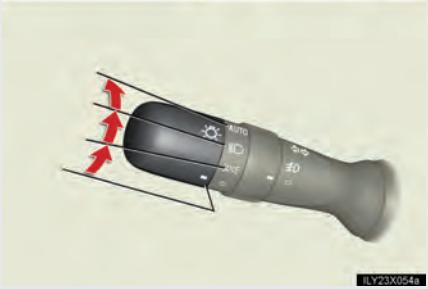
The multi-information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.





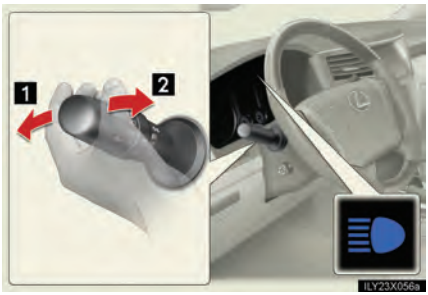
The side marker, parking, tail, license plate, daytime running lights and instrument panel lights turn on.

The headlights and all lights listed above (except daytime running lights) turn on.

AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights and all lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
(When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

The daytime running lights turn on.

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release the lever to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of the light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher

Deactivating AFS



On/off

The indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.

Daytime running light system

- To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.
- Compared to turning on the headlights, the daytime running light system offers greater durability and consumes less electricity, so it can help improve fuel economy.

Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

Automatic light off system

- When the headlights are on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened and closed if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been switched to ACCESSORY or OFF mode.
- When only the tail lights are on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY or OFF mode and driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to the or position.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **If the "AFS OFF" indicator flashes**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

Settings of the light sensor sensitivity can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)

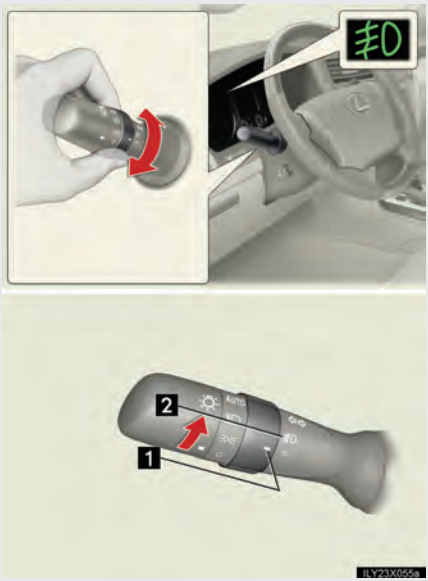
⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. The fog lights can be used when the headlights are on low beam.

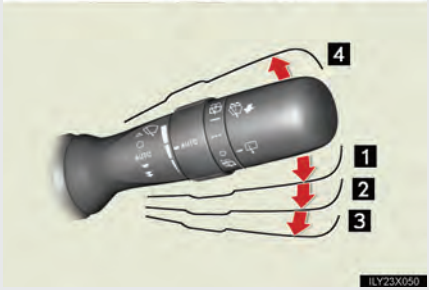


1 Off
2 On

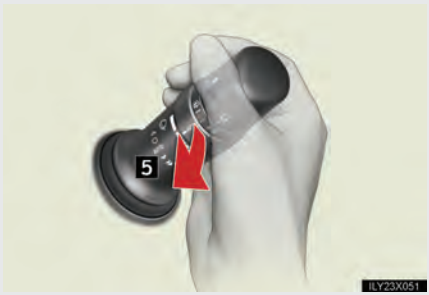
Windshield wipers and washer

With "AUTO" selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.





1 Rain-sensing wiper operation
2 Low speed wiper operation
3 High speed wiper operation
4 Temporary operation



5 Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

■ **The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

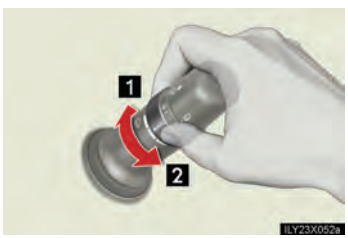
Vehicle speed affects the wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs) even when the wipers are not in "AUTO" mode.

With ▼ selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.
(However, the mode cannot be switched when the adjustment band for the sensor sensitivity is set to the highest position.)

■ **"AUTO" mode**



● The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.



● The sensitivity of sensor can be adjusted by twisting the band.

1 Sensor sensitivity (high)

2 Sensor sensitivity (low)

● If the wiper switch is turned to "AUTO" position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wiper will operate once to show that "AUTO" mode is activated.

● If the temperature of the rain drop sensor is 176°F (80°C) or higher, or 14°F (-10°C) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than "AUTO".

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked and if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Windshield wiper features

The rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers automatically turn on when you operate the wipers.

CAUTION

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

NOTICE

When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

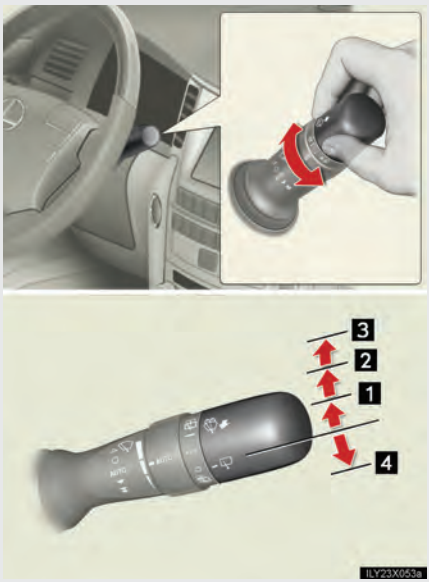
When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Rear window wiper and washer



1 Intermittent window wiper operation
2 Normal window wiper operation
3 Washer/wiper dual operation
4 Washer/wiper dual operation

■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Dripping prevention wiper sweep**

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

■ **Effect of vehicle and shift position on wiper operation**

- With ▬ selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only the vehicle is stationary.
- With ▬▬ or ○ selected, the rear window wiper sweeps once when you shift the shift lever to "R" while windshield wipers operating or with 17 seconds from their deactivation.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. drip prevention function) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)

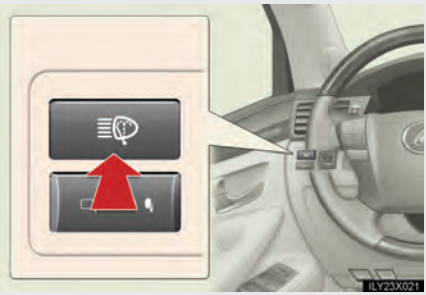
⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the rear window is dry**

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

Headlight cleaner switch*

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.



Press the switch to clean the headlights.

The headlight cleaner can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not use this function when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause the washer fluid pump to overheat.

*: If equipped

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.



1 Indicator
2 Cruise control switch

Setting the vehicle speed



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

*: If equipped

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in "D" or range "4" or higher of "S" has been selected.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- VSC is activated.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The switching operation continues for 5 seconds or more after the center differential lock switch has been operated.

■ **If the cruise control indicator light flashes**

Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Dynamic radar cruise control*

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



1 Indicator
2 Display
3 Set speed
4 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
5 Cruise control switch

*: If equipped

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

- When the set speed is shown in "MPH"
  Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated
  Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held
- When the set speed is shown in "km/h"
  Fine adjustment: By approximately 0.6 mph (1 km/h) each time the lever is operated
  Large adjustment: By approximately 3.1 mph (5 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 216), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 160 ft. (50 m)
Medium	Approximately 130 ft. (40 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

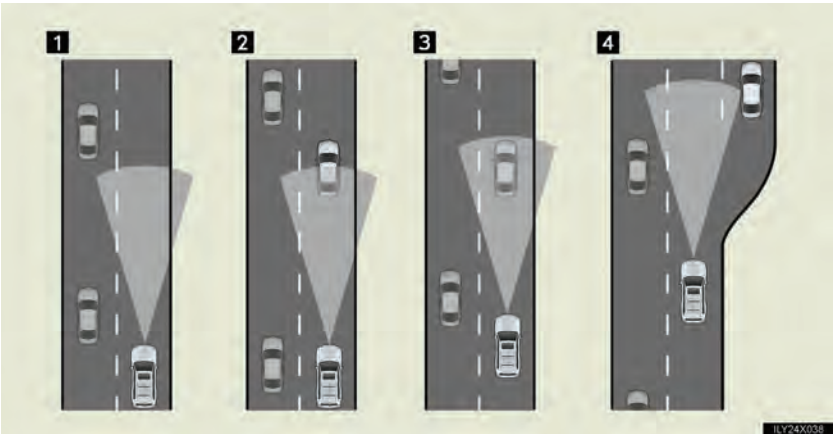
2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 400 ft. (120 m) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



1 Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

2 Example of deceleration cruising
When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

3 Example of follow-up cruising
When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

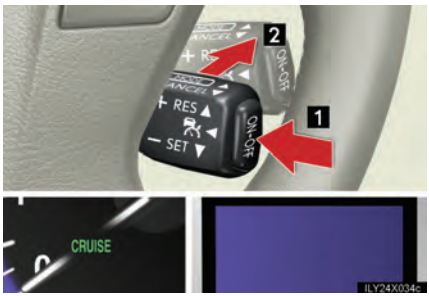
Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode differs from vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed regardless of whether or not there are other vehicles in the lane ahead.



1 Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode. (Push the lever forward and hold for approximately one second.)

Cruise control indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 211

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 213

■ **Dynamic radar cruise can be set when**

- The shift lever is in "D" or range "4" or higher of "S" has been selected.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wiper switch is set to the "AUTO" mode or high speed wiper operation position).
- When second start mode is set.
- The switching operation continues for 5 seconds or more after the center differential lock switch has been operated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

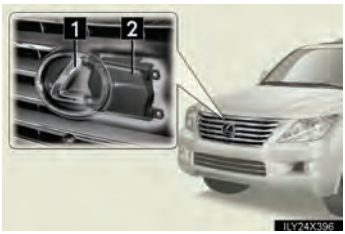
■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control**

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The switching operation continues for 5 seconds or more after the center differential lock switch has been operated.

■ **Radar sensor and grille cover**

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



1 Grille cover

2 Radar sensor

■ **Warning lights, messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control**

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 664)

■ **Certification**

▶ For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR005

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice and snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain etc.)
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning alarm (→P. 215) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively. Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

Intuitive parking assist*

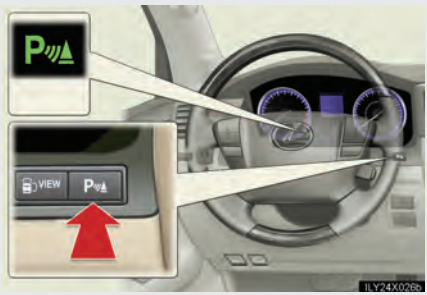
Intuitive parking assist uses sensors in the corners and rear of the vehicle to detect the distance between the vehicle and any obstacles, and informs the driver of this distance using the multi-information display, the touch screen, and warning beeps.

Sensor types



1 Front corner sensors
2 Rear corner sensors
3 Back sensors

Intuitive parking assist switch



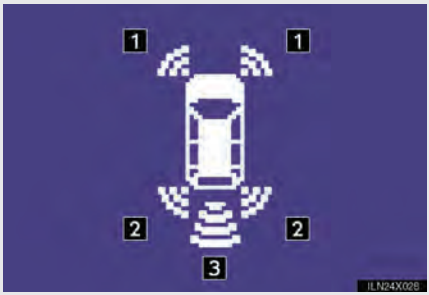
On/off

To turn the system on, press the switch. The indicator light comes on to inform the driver that the system is operational.

To turn the system off, press the switch again.

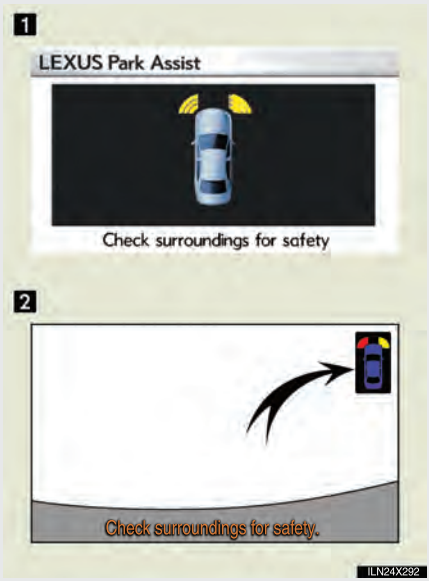
*: If equipped

Multi-information display



1 Front corner sensor detection
2 Rear corner sensor detection
3 Back sensor detection

Touch screen



1 When the rear view monitor system or the wide view front & side monitor is not displayed

The graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 336)

2 When the rear view monitor system or the wide view front & side monitor is displayed (insert display)

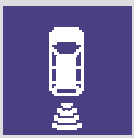
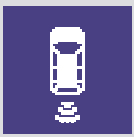
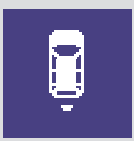
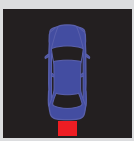
A simplified image is displayed on the touch screen when an obstacle is detected.

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

Corner sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen	
			Insert display
Front: 2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.6 ft. (47.5 cm) Rear: 2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.2 ft. (37.5 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)
Front: 1.6 ft. (47.5 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm) Rear: 1.2 ft. (37.5 cm) to 1.0 ft. (30 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)
Front: Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm) Rear: Less than 1.0 ft. (30 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)

Back sensors

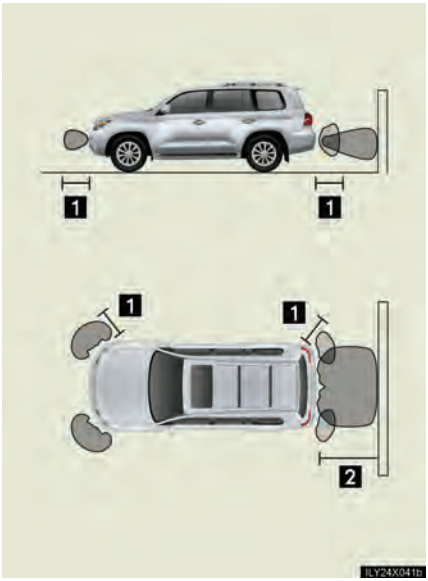
Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen (insert display)
4.9 ft. (150 cm) to 2.0 ft. (60 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)
2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.5 ft. (45 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)
1.5 ft. (45 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)
Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)

Beeps and obstacle distance

A beep sounds when the corner sensors and back sensors are operating.

- The beep sounds faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the beep sounds continuously.
  - Front corner and back sensors: Approximately 1.1 ft. (35 cm)
  - Rear corner sensors: Approximately 1.0 ft. (30 cm)
- When two or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the beep system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.

Obstacle detection range



1 About 2.0 ft. (60 cm)
2 About 4.9 ft. (150 cm)

The detection area of the sensors is shown to the left. If obstacles move too close to the sensors, they will not be detected.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

The intuitive parking assist can be operated when

- Front corner sensors:
  - The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in a position other than "P".
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Rear corner and back sensors:
  - The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in "R".

■ Sensor detection information

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of the sensor to correctly detect obstacles. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor. (Wiping the sensor will resolve this problem.)
- The sensor is frozen. (Thawing the sensor will resolve this problem.)
- The sensor is covered in any way.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- When driving on bumpy, sloped or gravel roads, or over grass.
- If there is something producing ultrasonic waves nearby, such as another vehicle's horn, motorcycle engine noise, air braking sound from heavy-duty vehicles, or another vehicle using the park assist system.
- In heavy rain, or if water is splashed on the sensors.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- If a commercial fender pole or radio antenna is installed.
- If moving towards a high curb or a curb corner.
- If towing eyelet is installed on your vehicle.
- The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by the sensor to be closer than they are.

● The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles.

- Thin objects such as wire, fencing or rope.
- Objects that absorb sound waves, such as cotton or snow.
- Objects with sharp corners.
- Low objects.
- Objects where the upper section projects out over the lower section.

■ **If a message is displayed on the multi-information display**

→P. 664

■ **When there is a malfunction**

In the following cases, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- If the bumper is damaged.
- If the intuitive parking assist indicator light remains on without a beep sounds.

■ **Warning beep volume and touch screen settings**

You can change the warning beep volume etc. (→P. 336)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When using the intuitive parking assist**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When moving forward or reversing, always check your surroundings for safety and drive carefully.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When washing the vehicle**

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

Rear view monitor system

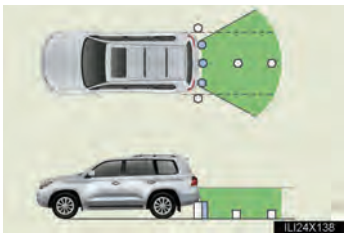
The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while reversing. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This allows the image to appear in the same manner as that of the rear view mirror.



Rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in "R".

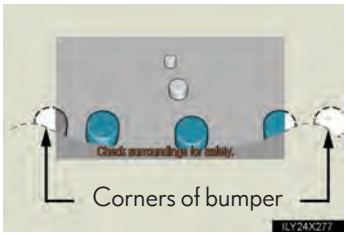
If you move the lever out of "R", the screen returns to the previous one.

Displayed area



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



Rear view monitor system camera



In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- In the dark (e.g. at night).
- If the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- If water droplets get on the camera, or when humidity is high (e.g. when it rains).
- If foreign matter (e.g. snow or mud) get on the camera lens.
- If the sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

Smear effect



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* peculiar to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect – A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, or mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When using the rear view monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the back door is not completely closed.

■ Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system

- If the back of the vehicle is hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may change. Contact your Lexus dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

Wide view front & side monitor*

This system can display the wide view front monitor and the side monitor separately or at the same time.
The wide view front monitor uses a super-wide angle lens to display on screen the areas to the left and right of the vehicle and the blind spots to the front of the vehicle. This system helps the driver check for approaching cars, bicycles and pedestrians when at intersections with poor visibility.
The side monitor uses a camera installed in the passenger's side outside rear view mirror to display on screen the area to the front-right of the vehicle, helping the driver check this area.



On/off

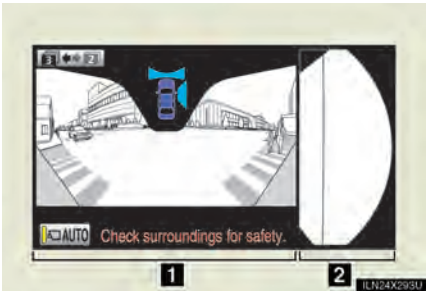
The simultaneous display screen is displayed when the "VIEW" switch is pressed.

*: If equipped

Display

Wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display

Both the wide view front monitor and the side monitor are displayed on one screen. When switching to the wide view front & side monitors this screen is displayed first, regardless of the screen mode.



1 Wide view front monitor
2 Side monitor

Wide view front monitor

The image from the front camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area in front of the vehicle for safety, for example in intersections with poor visibility.



Side monitor

The image from the side camera is displayed (the right front view is expanded and displayed). Use this monitor to help check the area to the right of the vehicle, for example when taking off and stopping, when turning right, etc.



Changing the screen mode

This system has a 2 screen mode and a 3 screen mode.

2 screen mode: Only the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display can be used.

3 screen mode: The wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display or the individual display can be used. The display can be switched between the simultaneous display and the individual display by operating the "VIEW" switch.



The screen mode is changed from the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display screen. The screen mode will change as the  or  buttons are touched.

If the screen is changed to the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display screen while the Lexus parking assist monitor is displayed, it is not possible to switch to the 3 screen mode. (The switch is not displayed.)

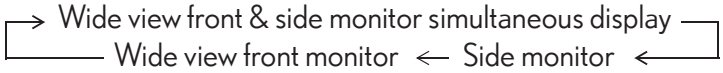
Changing the display in 3 screen mode

When in 3 screen mode, you can change the display from the simultaneous display to each individual display.

The screen changes as follows with each press of the "VIEW" switch.
When the wide view front monitor was displayed the previous time:



When the side monitor was displayed the previous time:



The wide view front monitor and side monitor individual displays are not accessible when the shift lever is in "R".

Automatic display mode

You can set the automatic display mode, which automatically changes the display.

Touch "AUTO".

When automatic display mode is on, you can have the system display automatically in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is in "N", "D" or "S".
- When the shift lever is in a position other than "R", and the vehicle speed is approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.

"AUTO" will not be displayed when the shift lever is in "R".

■ **The wide view front & side monitor can be operated when**

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

■ **Automatic system cancelation**

In the following situations, the system is canceled automatically.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h).
- When the shift lever is in "R".

■ **When the outside rear view mirrors have been folded**

The side monitor screen can be displayed even if the outside rear view mirrors have been folded. In this case, there will be a slight difference between the image displayed when the outside rear view mirrors are extended and when the outside rear view mirrors have been folded.

If the side monitor is displayed while the outside rear view mirrors are folded, you cannot check the area near the front edge of the vehicle as the base of the outside rear view mirrors will be in the way.

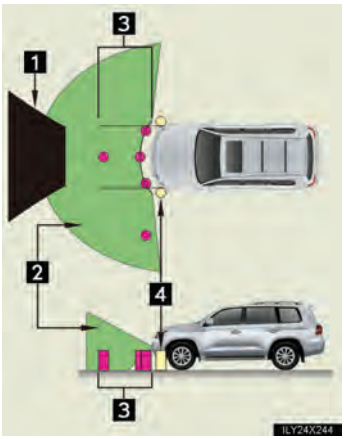
■ **When switched to from the Lexus parking assist monitor**

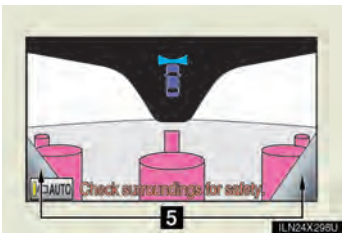


If the wide view front & side monitor is switched to from the Lexus parking assist monitor, the icon display area will flash to inform the driver that the currently displayed area is the front or side. The icon display area will continue to flash until the screen is turned off.

Displayed area

▶ Front camera





1 Masking

This section is masked to prevent the driver from moving the vehicle while watching only the wide view front monitor screen. The driver must visually confirm this area directly.

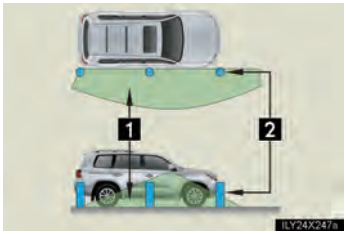
2 Camera's field of view

3 Objects visible to the camera

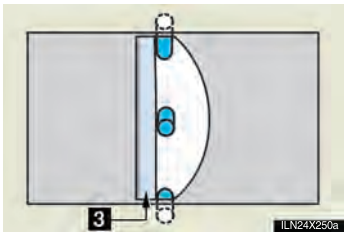
4 Objects not visible to the camera

5 Parts of the vehicle (bumper, grill, etc.)

▶ Side camera



1 Camera's field of view
2 Objects visible to the camera
3 Right side of vehicle



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

Wide view front & side monitor cameras



1 Side camera
2 Front camera

In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- In the dark (e.g. at night).
- If the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- If water droplets get on the camera, or when humidity is high (e.g. when it rains).
- If foreign matter (e.g. snow or mud) get on the camera lens.
- If the sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.
- If the camera lens is damaged by flying stones.

Smear effect



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* peculiar to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect – A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it. The vertical streak also appears in the masked areas.

Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, or mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

CAUTION

When using the wide view front & side monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend solely on the monitor system.
- Always check visually to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the hood or the front passenger's door is not completely closed.

CAUTION

Conditions which may affect the wide view front & side monitor system

- If the front of the vehicle or the passenger side outside rear view mirror is hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may change. Contact your Lexus dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- Situations unsuitable for wide view front & side monitor
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow.
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires.
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

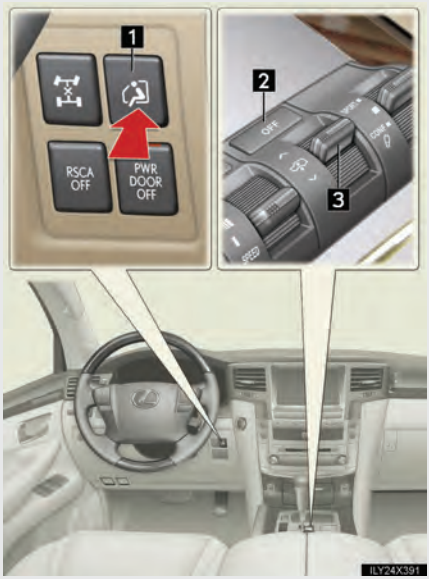
NOTICE

When using the wide view front & side monitor

Even if an obstacle is no longer visible on the side monitor, do not turn the steering wheel further in the direction the vehicle is turning until the vehicle has moved completely past the obstacle. If the steering wheel is turned to full lock, the vehicle will turn in the smallest possible turning circle, and may collide with the obstacle.

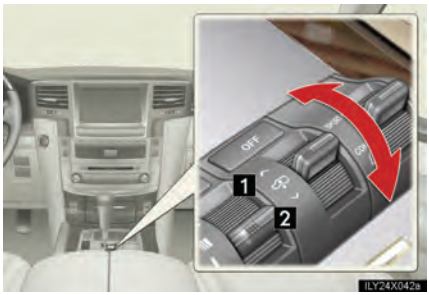
4-Wheel AHC (Active Height Control Suspension)

The 4-Wheel AHC adjusts the vehicle height in accordance with driving conditions. There are 3 selectable modes, “HI” (high), “N” (normal), and “LO” (low).



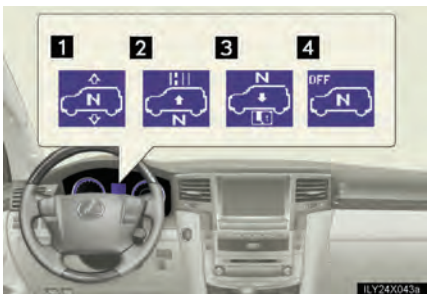
1 Easy access mode switch
2 Height control switch
3 Height select switch

Selecting vehicle height



1 Higher
2 Lower

Display



1 Current mode

The vehicle is in the "N" (normal) height mode in the illustration. ⇧ and ⇩ show directions in which it is possible to adjust the vehicle height.

2 Height up
3 Height down
4 Height control "OFF" indicator

When the height control "OFF" indicator is displayed, the vehicle height will not change even if the height select switches are operated.

Vehicle height modes

Push the height select switch to "∧" to step up one height mode, and pull to "∨" to step down one height mode. (Ex. When in the low height mode, push to "∧" once to switch to the normal height mode, and twice to switch to the high height mode.)

"HI" (high) height mode

Vehicle height is about 2.0 in. (50 mm) higher at the front, and about 2.4 in. (60 mm) higher at the rear than the normal mode height.
This mode is suitable when driving on bumpy roads or through water.
High height mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 18 mph (30 km/h).

"N" (normal) height mode

The standard vehicle height. This mode is suitable for ordinary driving.
When driving at high speeds, the vehicle height is automatically lowered by 0.8 in. (20 mm) in the front and 0.6 in. (15 mm) in the rear, to ensure excellent aerodynamic characteristics and stability.
If the vehicle speed drops to 50 mph (80 km/h) or less, normal mode is automatically resumed.

"LO" (low) height mode

Vehicle height is about 2.4 in. (60 mm) lower at the front, and about 1.6 in. (40 mm) lower at the rear than the normal mode height.
This mode allows easy access to the vehicle.
Low height mode is only available when the vehicle is stopped. When the vehicle speed exceeds 7 mph (12 km/h), normal height mode is automatically selected.

Conditions for changing the vehicle height mode

Some modes may not be selectable depending on the vehicle speed when the four-wheel drive control switch is in the "H4" position. Refer to the following table.

	Low mode	Normal mode	High mode
Under 7 mph (12 km/h)	Yes	Yes	Yes
7 mph (12 km/h) to 18 mph (30 km/h)	No	Yes	Yes
18 mph (30 km/h) or over	No	Yes	No

Easy access mode



You can select this mode for easy access and easy loading of the vehicle.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF mode when this mode is on, the vehicle height is lowered automatically.

When the vehicle begins to lower a beep will sound twice, and while the vehicle is lowering the indicator light will flash to alert the driver and surrounding people that the vehicle is lowering.

The indicator light stops blinking, and comes on continuously to indicate that the shift is completed.

Easy access mode is available if the following conditions have been met:

- The vehicle height mode is in normal mode.
- The vehicle is stopped on a flat surface.
- The shift lever is in "P".

The following method will cancel the vehicle lowering operation and raise the vehicle again:

- Press the height control switch.
- Push the height select switch to "∧".

Disabling the height control



Push while the vehicle is stopped. The "OFF" indicator will appear on the multi-information display, and the vehicle height will be fixed in the current mode. Push the switch again to turn the system back on.

Operating conditions

- The engine must be running.
- All side doors and the back door must be closed.

■ **Automatic change in vehicle height when the four-wheel drive control switch is in the "L4" position**

If the vehicle speed exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h) while driving on an uneven road with the four-wheel drive control switch in the "L4" position, high mode is automatically selected. (On even roads, the height mode will not change.)

■ **Automatic change in vehicle height when in the high mode**

- If the vehicle speed exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h) with the four-wheel drive control switch in the "H4" position, normal mode is automatically selected.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h) with the four-wheel drive control switch in the "L4" position, the vehicle height is lowered to 1.0 in. (25 mm) higher than the normal mode height. If the vehicle speed drops to 12 mph (20 km/h) or less, high mode is automatically resumed.

■ **Extra high mode**

If the vehicle becomes stuck or the Crawl Control system requests the vehicle height be raised, extra high mode may be automatically selected when the vehicle height is in high mode with the four-wheel drive control switch in the "L4" position. The vehicle height is raised to 0.8 in. (20 mm) higher than the high mode height, or slightly higher.

- Extra high mode will change back to high mode when:
  - The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
  - The four-wheel drive control switch is shifted to "H4".
- If you pull the height select switch to "∨" when in extra high mode, normal mode is selected.
- Extra high mode cannot be manually selected.

■ **Turning off the 4-Wheel AHC**

- The system will remain off until the height control "OFF" switch is pushed again, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off.
- Even if the system is turned off, the system automatically modulated if the vehicle speed exceeds following.
  - 18 mph (30 km/h) with high or low mode
  - 50 mph (80 km/h) with normal mode

■ **If the vehicle travels at high speed while in normal mode**

The vehicle's height will automatically lower by 0.8 in. (20 mm) at the front and 0.6 in. (15 mm) at the rear. If the vehicle's speed decreases, the vehicle's height automatically returns to normal.

If the vehicle is loaded with heavy items, a shock may be felt at this time.

■ **When driving on bumpy roads with the four-wheel drive control switch in "L4"**

High mode is automatically selected.

■ **Automatic leveling function**

The vehicle is adjusted to a fixed height for each mode, regardless of the number of occupants and the luggage load.

- However the vehicle cannot be raised if the vehicle load exceeds the following limits:
  - Up to 4 occupants* plus approximately 706 lb. (320 kg) in the normal mode
  - Up to 4 occupants* plus approximately 419 lb. (190 kg) in the high mode

*: average weight 150 lb. (68 kg) per person

- If the vehicle height cannot be raised when in the normal mode, and "LO" appears on the display, the vehicle is loaded too heavily. Take extra care when driving in this condition.
  If the vehicle height cannot be raised even after unloading the vehicle, pull the height select switch to "∨" then push to "∧". If the vehicle height still cannot be raised, turn the ignition off then on again, then try once more.

■ **When the vehicle is stopped during driving**

The activation of the automatic leveling function may cause the vehicle height to change. This is not a malfunction.

■ **If the vehicle height does not change**

If the vehicle is loaded too heavily, or the undercarriage has come into contact with the road surface, the vehicle height cannot be raised/lowered.

■ **In the following cases the 4-Wheel AHC will not operate**

- The brake pedal has been depressed for a few seconds or longer while the vehicle is stopped. (Except when the four-wheel drive control switch is in "L4".)
- The suspension fluid temperature is lower than -22°F (-30°C).
- Driving on bumpy roads which may cause the suspension to fully elongate.
- If the steering wheel is abruptly turned more than 3/4 of a revolution with the center differential lock system activated.

■ **Cold weather operation**

It may take longer for the vehicle height to change if the suspension fluid temperature drops below 5°F (-15°C).

The 4-Wheel AHC does not operate when the suspension fluid temperature drops below -22°F (-30°C).

- In this case, even if the height select switch is pressed, the vehicle height will not change. Once the engine has warmed the suspension fluid to within normal operating limits, the 4-Wheel AHC will begin operating and the vehicle height will automatically change to the selected mode.
- When the suspension fluid is around -22°F (-30°C), the vehicle height may not be able to be raised, even if the 4-Wheel AHC is operating. In this case, pull the height select switch to "∨" then push to "∧" after further warming the engine to select the desired vehicle height.

■ **Parking and stopping tips**

- If you immediately stop the engine after off-road driving, or park the vehicle for a long time, the vehicle height may gradually lower. When parking, make sure there is nothing under the vehicle that may come in contact with the underbody. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.
- The vehicle height may change as the temperature changes when the engine is stopped. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.

Propeller shaft noise

If the vehicle height is adjusted on a slope, or with the shift lever in a position other than "P" or "N" while the vehicle is stopped, you may hear a sound caused by the expansion and contraction of the propeller shaft. This does not indicate a malfunction.

Continued system operation

Even if the engine is stopped while the vehicle height is being lowered, operation will continue for up to 30 seconds.

4-Wheel AHC failure warning

If a malfunction occurs in the 4-Wheel AHC or AVS system, normal mode is automatically selected. However, the system may not switch to normal mode depending on the location of the malfunction.
The warning message is displayed on the multi-information display, and the 4-Wheel AHC cannot be activated until the malfunction is corrected.
Stop the engine and start it again. If the warning message turns off, the system is operating correctly. If the warning message continues to be displayed, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the high mode

The high mode should only be used when driving on rough roads, for example when driving off-road. Because the vehicle's center of gravity will become higher when in the mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly, resulting in an accident.

■ When jacking up the vehicle or installing tire chains

Turn off the 4-Wheel AHC and stop the engine, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

■ When driving through water deeper than 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)

Select the high mode and turn off the 4-Wheel AHC. Drive at 18 mph (30 km/h) or lower. Otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

■ If your vehicle must be towed

Put the vehicle height in the normal mode and turn off the 4-Wheel AHC, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

■ If your vehicle becomes stuck in a ditch

Turn off the 4-Wheel AHC, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damage to the vehicle

- After unloading, the vehicle height may be slightly higher than normal. Take care when overhead height is limited.
- Before lowering the vehicle height, check that no-one is under the vehicle and the area is free of obstructions. Also check that the underbody of the vehicle will not touch the ground.
- Do not select the low mode when driving on bumpy roads, as the underbody of the vehicle may contact the road surface.
- When traveling on bumpy roads or through water, or when towing, turn off easy access mode.

■ Avoid rapid changes to the vehicle height

As the pump may overheat. Leave at a few seconds between selections when changing the vehicle height mode.

AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension)

AVS controls the suspension according to the road and driving conditions. Selecting an optimum driving mode allows good riding comfort and stability.



1 For driving on a bumpy road

2 For ordinary driving such as in the city traffic

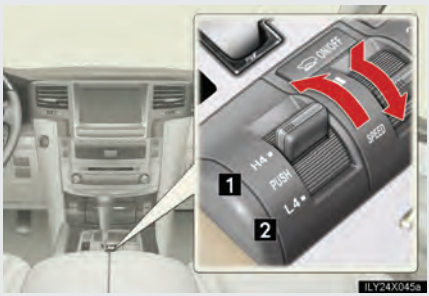
3 For sporty type driving such as on winding mountain roads and high speed driving

■ Driving mode

- Mode 2 is suitable for ordinary driving.
- Mode 3 is suitable for heavy load or driving on a unpaved road.
- With the four-wheel drive control switch at "L4", the damping effect suitable for off-road driving will be provided.

Use the four-wheel drive control switch and center differential lock/unlock switch to select the following transfer and center differential modes.

Four-wheel drive control switch



1 "H4" (high speed position)

Normal driving on all types of roads.

2 "L4" (low speed position)

Driving requiring maximum power and traction such as climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving, and hard pulling in sand or mud, etc.

Center differential lock/unlock switch



Lock the center differential when your vehicle's wheels get stuck in a ditch or when driving on a slippery or bumpy surface.

Unlock the center differential after the wheels have been freed, or after moving to a flat, non-slippery surface.

Shifting between “H4” and “L4”

Shifting from “H4” to “L4”

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle completely.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to “N”.

STEP 3 Push and shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “L4”.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns on.

Shifting from “L4” to “H4”

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle completely.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to “N”.

STEP 3 Shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “H4”.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns off.

The four-wheel drive control switch can be operated when

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in the “N” position.
- The vehicle is stopped completely.

The low speed four-wheel drive indicator light

The indicator light blinks while shifting between “H4” and “L4”.

■ **Advice for driving on slippery roads**

- If you shift the four-wheel drive control switch to "L4" and the shift lever to the "2" range of "S" while driving in steep off-road areas, the output of the brake can be controlled effectively by the Active TRAC, which assists the driver to control the driving power of 4 wheels.
- Use the "1" range of "S" of the shift lever for maximum power and traction when your wheels get stuck or when driving down a steep incline.

■ **The center differential lock indicator light**

The indicator light blinks while locking/unlocking the center differential.

■ **The center differential lock/unlock button can be operated when**

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 mph (100 km/h).

■ **Locking/unlocking the center differential**

- When the center differential is locked, VSC is automatically turned off. (The center differential lock and "VSC OFF" indicator lights come on.)
- If the operation is not completed, the center differential lock indicator blinks. If the indicator light does not turn off when unlocking the center differential, drive straight ahead while accelerating or decelerating, or drive in reverse.
- If the center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on, cancel the cruise control system.

■ **If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light blinks**

- If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light continues to blink when using the four-wheel drive control switch, stop the vehicle completely, move the shift lever to "N" and operate the switch again.
- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

  Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in "P". You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode.

  To complete the shifting, stop the vehicle completely, return the shift lever to "N", and confirm that the shift was completed (the indicator turns on/off).
- If the engine coolant temperature is too low, the four-wheel drive control system may not be able to shift. When the engine is warmer operate the switch again.

If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light continues to blink even after attempting the above, there may be a malfunction in the engine, the brake system or the four-wheel drive system. In this case, you may not be able to shift between "H4" and "L4", and the center differential lock may not be operable. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

■ While driving

Never move the four-wheel drive control switch if the wheels have lost traction. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is parked

If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in "P". You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode. (→P. 258)

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the center differential

- For normal driving on dry and hard surface roads, unlock the center differential.
- Unlock the center differential after the wheels are out of the ditch or off the slippery or bumpy surface.
- Do not push the center differential lock/unlock button when the vehicle is turning or when its wheels are spinning freely off the ground.

Crawl Control

Allows travel on extremely rough off-road surfaces at a fixed low speed without pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. Minimizes loss of traction or vehicle slip when driving on slippery road surfaces, allowing for stable driving.

Crawl Control switch



1 On/off

The Crawl Control indicator is lit and the slip indicator flashes when operating.

2 Speed selection switch

3 Low mode

Effective when traveling on rocks and pebbles.*

4 Medium mode

Effective when traveling on snow mounds or descending a slope of rubble.*

5 High mode

Effective when ascending a slope of rubble, or traveling on snow, dirt, mud, sand, gravel, grass etc.*

*: Depending on the road surface, may not be the most effective.

When the system is turned off

If the system is turned off when Crawl Control is operating, the slip indicator turns off, and the Crawl Control indicator flashes until the system has turned off completely. When turning off Crawl Control while traveling, stop the vehicle before the Crawl Control indicator turns off, or drive extremely carefully.

The Crawl Control can be operated when

- The engine is running.
- The shift lever is in any gear other than "P" or "N".
- The four-wheel drive control switch is in "L4".
- The driver's door is closed.

■ **Automatic system cancelation**

In either of the following situations, a buzzer sounds for approximately 3 seconds. The Crawl Control indicator goes off after the system has automatically turned off:

- When the shift lever is moved to "P".
- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in "H4".

In either of the following situations, a buzzer sounds for approximately 3 seconds, the Crawl Control indicator blinks, and the control will decrease gradually. The Crawl Control indicator goes off after the system has automatically turned off:

- When the shift lever is moved to "N".
- If the driver's door is opened.

■ **Function limitations**

- In the following situations, brake control can be used to drive downhill at a constant speed. However, engine control is not available when driving uphill at a constant speed.
  - When switched to second start mode
  - When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
- In the following situation, engine control and brake control will be temporarily canceled.
  - When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 15 mph (25 km/h).

■ **If the brake system overheats**

The system will cease operation and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)

■ **If the automatic transmission system overheats**

The system will cease operation, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed, or the automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light will come on to alert the driver. Stop the vehicle in a safe place until the warning message or the warning light turns off.

Sounds and vibrations caused by the Crawl Control system

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in Crawl Control system.
- Either of the following conditions may occur when the Crawl Control system is operating. None of these are indicators that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

CAUTION

When using Crawl Control

Do not rely solely on the Crawl Control. This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

These conditions may cause the system not to operate properly

When driving on the following surfaces, the system may not be able to maintain a fixed low speed, which may result in an accident:

- Extremely steep inclines.
- Extremely uneven surfaces.
- Snow-covered roads, or other slippery surfaces.

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Multi Terrain ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface, or in off-road conditions (such as rough roads, sand and mud).

Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation.

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

Active TRAC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the 4 wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

Hill-start assist control

Helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope. The hill-start assist control only operate for 5 seconds when engaged.

VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering)

Helps to adjust the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement.

Pre-Collision System (if equipped)

→P. 274

When the VSC/Active TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, rolling backwards when starting on an incline, or if the wheels spin, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/Active TRAC/hill-start assist control systems have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC or hill-start assist control is operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

To disable Active TRAC and/or VSC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, Active TRAC and VSC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

Turning off Active TRAC



Quickly push and release the button to turn off Active TRAC.

The "TRAC OFF" indicator light will come on.

Active TRAC will stop the control of the engine. However, the brake will remain to be controlled.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

Turning off Active TRAC and VSC



Push and hold the button for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped to turn off Active TRAC and VSC.

The "TRAC OFF" indicator light and VSC OFF indicator light will come on.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

■ **When the "TRAC OFF" indicator light comes on even if the VSC OFF switch has not been pressed**

Active TRAC, hill-start assist control, Crawl Control cannot be operated. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Active TRAC can be turned off when**

The four-wheel drive control switch is in "H4" and the center differential is unlocked.

■ **Automatic reactivation of Active TRAC and VSC**

Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off after turning off the Active TRAC and VSC systems will automatically re-enable them.

■ **Automatic Active TRAC reactivation**

If only the Active TRAC system is turned off, the Active TRAC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Automatic Active TRAC and VSC reactivation**

If the Active TRAC and VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ **If the brake system overheats**

The Active TRAC and hill-start assist control will cease operation and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver. Stop the vehicle in a safe place (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the Multi Terrain ABS, brake assist, Active TRAC, VSC, hill-start assist control and VGRS**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the Multi Terrain ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the Multi Terrain ABS is activated.

■ **Hill-start assist control is operational when**

- The shift lever is in "D" or "S".
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ **VGRS is disabled in the following situations**

- During stopping or the steering wheel has been moved for a long time while driving at lower speeds.
- After the engine is restarted at less than -22°F (-30°C).
- If you disconnect the battery with the steering wheel turned, the center position of the steering wheel could be slightly and temporary changed. To initialize the VGRS, drive for a short while.

⚠ CAUTION

Any of the following conditions may result in an accident which could cause death or serious injury:

■ **The Multi Terrain ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

■ **Stopping distance when the Multi Terrain ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions**

The Multi Terrain ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations.

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven roads

■ **Active TRAC may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the Active TRAC is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ **If the hill-start assist control does not operate effectively**

Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered in ice.

⚠ CAUTION

When Active TRAC and VSC are off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn off Active TRAC and VSC unless necessary.

When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the specified tire pressure level.

The Multi Terrain ABS and VSC will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

Handling of tires and suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

Pre-Collision System*

When the radar sensor detects that a frontal collision is highly likely or even unavoidable, safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats only)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs.
The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 94)

Pre-collision brake assist

Applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-collision AVS

If the system determines that the collision is unavoidable, the operation of AVS (→P. 257) helps prevent the vehicle front from going down when hard brakes are applied.

*: If equipped

Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

When traveling on a road with very light traffic and very little to reflect the radar waves emitted by the radar sensor, the system may decide that the radar sensor is dirty, even if the sensor is not actually dirty. The system will automatically restore itself when reflected radar waves are detected.

Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the radar sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

The pre-collision system is operational when

- Seat belts (linked to the radar sensor)
  - Vehicle speed is above 4 mph (5 km/h).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Seat belts (linked to brake operation)
  - Vehicle speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

- Brake assist
  - Vehicle speed is above 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
- AVS
  - Vehicle speed is above 4 mph (5 km/h).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).

■ **Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of collision**

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
- When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment
- When passing through certain toll gates

When the system is activated in the situations described above there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the restricted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 653, 664)

■ **Certification**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR005

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area are subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

Off-road precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

Off-road vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Off-road vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle roll-over causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

Additional information for off-road driving

▶ For owners in U.S. mainland, Hawaii and Puerto Rico:

To obtain additional information pertaining to driving your vehicle off-road, consult the following organizations.

- State and Local Parks and Recreation Departments
- State Motor Vehicle Bureau
- Recreational Vehicle Clubs
- U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management

⚠ CAUTION

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

To prevent the water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

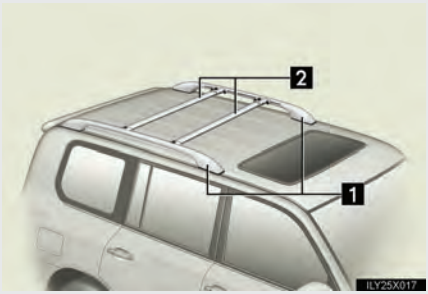
Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

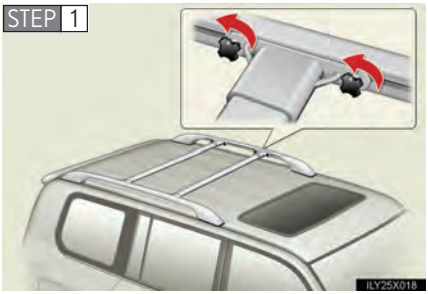
Roof luggage carrier (if equipped)



1 Roof rails
2 Cross rails

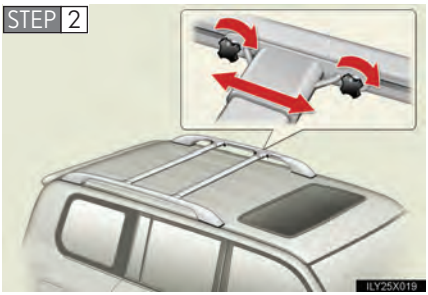
Adjusting the position of cross rails

STEP 1



Turn the knobs counterclockwise to release the cross rails.

STEP 2



Slide the cross rails to the appropriate position for loading luggage and turn the knobs clockwise to tighten the cross rails securely.

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

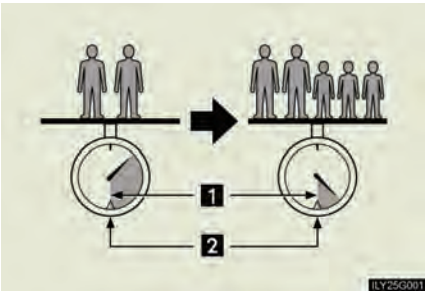
(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 - 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (→P. 291)

Example on your vehicle



1 Cargo capacity
2 Total load capacity

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 1230 lb. (560 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

1230 lb. – 366 lb. = 864 lb. (560 kg – 166 kg = 394 kg)

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

864 lb. – 388 lb. = 476 lb. (394 kg – 176 kg = 218 kg)

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of the occupants who got on later, by an amount. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment.

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking, sudden swerving or in an accident.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the items may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident.
  - Driver's feet
  - Front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - Instrument panel
  - Dashboard
  - Auxiliary box or tray that has no lid
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious injury, in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Weight of the load

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

■ Roof luggage carrier precautions

To use the roof rails as a roof luggage carrier, you must fit the roof rails with two or more genuine Lexus cross rails or their equivalent.

When you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier, observe the following:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P. 698)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 154 lb. (70 kg) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

CAUTION

Cross rail adjustment

Make sure the cross rails are locked securely by pushing forward and rearward them.
Failure to do so may cause an accident or serious injury in the event of emergency braking or a collision.

NOTICE

Cross rail adjustment

Do not remove the cross rail stoppers, or the moon roof may be damage when it is tilted.

When loading the luggage

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, TWR (Trailer Weight Rating) and cargo capacity.

Total load capacity: 1230 lb. (560 kg)

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

Seating capacity: 8 occupants (Front 2, Rear 6)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

Even if the number of occupants are within the seating capacity, do not exceed the total load capacity.

TWR (Trailer Weight Rating): 7000 lb. (3175 kg)

TWR means the maximum gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo weight) that you vehicle is able to tow.

Cargo capacity

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

Total load capacity and seating capacity

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label.
(→P. 602)

CAUTION

Overloading the vehicle

Do not overload the vehicle.
It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

When driving the vehicle

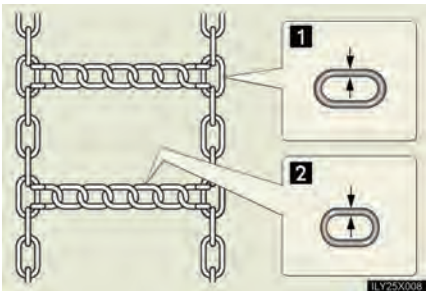
Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to "P" without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



1 Side chain
(0.20 in. [5 mm] in diameter)
2 Cross chain
(0.25 in. [6.3 mm] in diameter)

Regulations on the use of tire chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

Tire chains

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires only. Do not install the chains on the front tires.
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying manual.

CAUTION

Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended level of tire inflation pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.

Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs of and obtain replacement snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Fitting tire chains

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer can have an adverse impact on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, you must not overload your vehicle or trailer. You must also ensure that you are using appropriate towing equipment, that the towing equipment has been installed correctly and used properly, and that you employ the requisite driving habits.

Vehicle-trailer stability and braking performance are affected by trailer stability, brake performance and setting, trailer brakes, the hitch and hitch systems (if equipped).

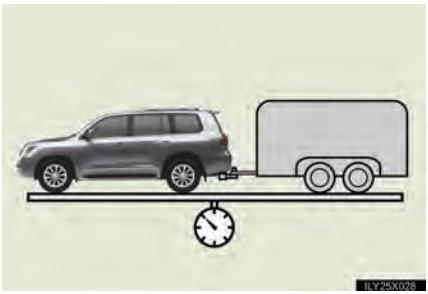
To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with your trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as towing kits, etc.

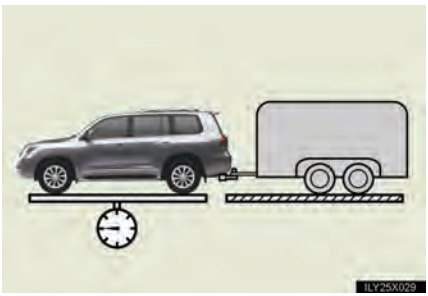
Towing related terms

GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating)



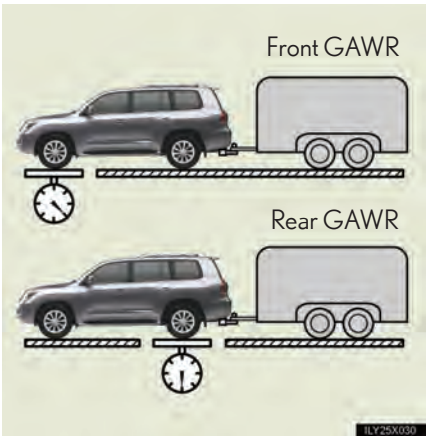
The maximum allowable gross combination weight. The gross combination weight is the sum of the total vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the weight of the trailer being towed (including the cargo in the trailer).

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)



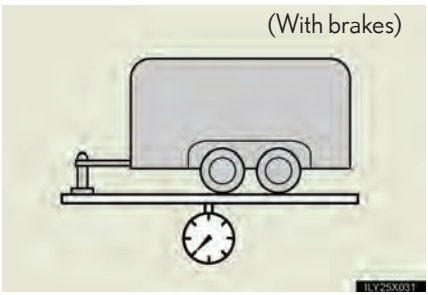
The maximum allowable gross vehicle weight. The gross vehicle weight is the total weight of the vehicle. When towing a trailer, it is the sum of the vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the tongue weight.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)



The maximum allowable gross axle weight. The gross axle weight is the load placed on each axle (front and rear).

TWR (Trailer Weight Rating)



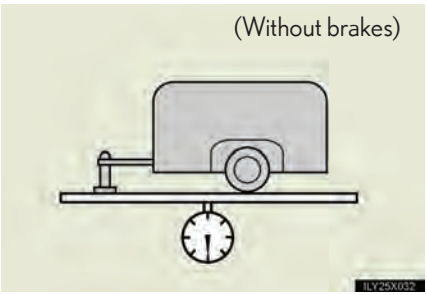
The maximum allowable gross trailer weight. The gross trailer weight is the sum of the trailer weight and the weight of the cargo in the trailer.

TWR is calculated assuming base vehicle with one driver, one front passenger, towing package (if available), hitch and hitch systems (if required).

Additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the vehicle will reduce the trailer weight rating so as not to exceed GCWR, GVWR and GAWR.

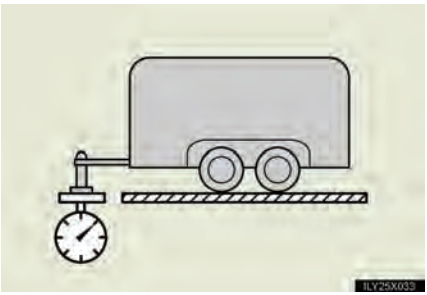
If the gross trailer weight exceeds 3000 lb. (1360 kg), it is recommended to use a trailer with 2 or more axles.

Unbraked TWR (Unbraked Trailer Weight Rating)



The trailer weight rating for towing a trailer without a trailer service brake system.

Tongue Weight



The load placed on the trailer hitch ball. (→P. 303)

Weight limits

- The gross trailer weight must never exceed 7000 lb. (3175 kg).
- The gross combination weight must never exceed 13400 lb. (6078 kg).



- The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the GVWR indicated on the Certification Label.
- The gross axle weight on each axle must never exceed the GAWR indicated on the Certification Label.
- If the gross trailer weight is over the unbraked TWR, trailer service brakes are required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 2000 lb. (907 kg), a sway control device with sufficient capacity is required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 5000 lb. (2268 kg), a weight distributing hitch with sufficient capacity is required.

GCWR, TWR, Unbraked TWR, Fifth wheel and Gooseneck towing TWR

Confirm that the gross trailer weight, gross combination weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and tongue weight are all within the limits.

■ GCWR*

13400 lb. (6078 kg)

■ TWR*

7000 lb. (3175 kg)

■ Unbraked TWR*

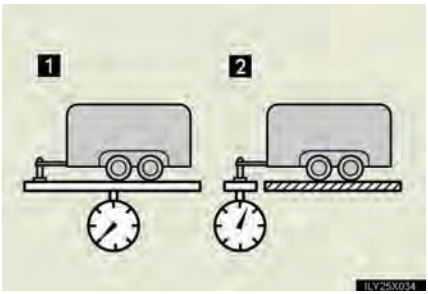
1000 lb. (454 kg)

*: This model meets the tow-vehicle trailering requirement of SAE International per SAE J2807.

Trailer Tongue Weight

- A recommended tongue weight varies in accordance with the types of trailers or towing as described below.
- To ensure the recommended values shown below, the trailer must be loaded by referring to the following instructions.
  - Tongue Weight

    The gross trailer weight should be distributed so that the tongue weight is 9% to 11%. (Tongue weight/Gross trailer weight × 100 = 9% to 11%)



1 Gross trailer weight
2 Tongue weight

If using a weight distributing hitch when towing, return the front axle to the same weight as before the trailer connection.

If front axle weight cannot be measured directly, measure the front fender height above the front axle before connection. Adjust weight distributing hitch torque until front fender is returned to the same height as before connection.

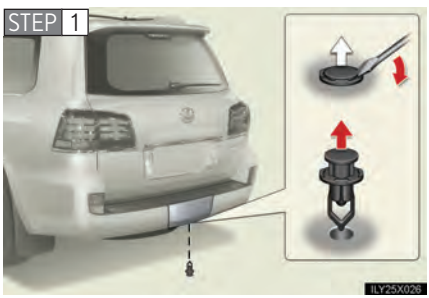
The gross trailer weight, gross axle weight and tongue weight can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing station, building supply company, trucking company, junk yard, etc.

Hitch

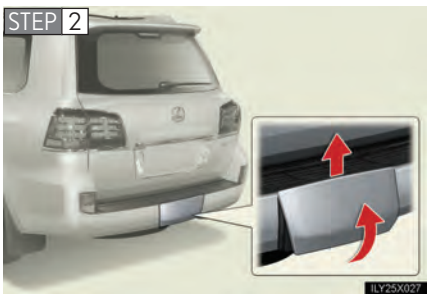
Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

- If you wish to install a trailer hitch, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Use only a hitch that conforms to the gross trailer weight requirement of your vehicle.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer.
- Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coating of grease.
- Remove the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting hole in the vehicle body to prevent entry of any substances into the vehicle.

Removing hitch cover



Remove the clip.

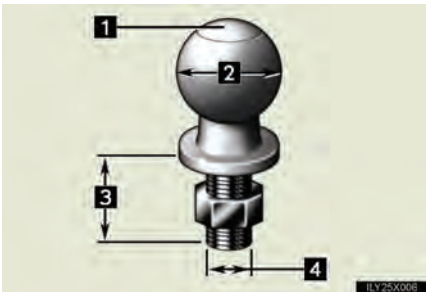


Grasp the lower edge of the hitch cover and raise the cover.

When reattaching the cover, reverse the steps listed.

Selecting trailer ball

Use the correct trailer ball for your application.



1 Trailer ball load rating

Matches or exceeds the gross trailer weight rating of the trailer.

2 Ball diameter

Matches the size of the trailer coupler. Most couplers are stamped with the required trailer ball size.

Trailer class	Typical trailer ball size
IV	2 5/16 in.
II and III	2 in.
I	1 7/8 in.

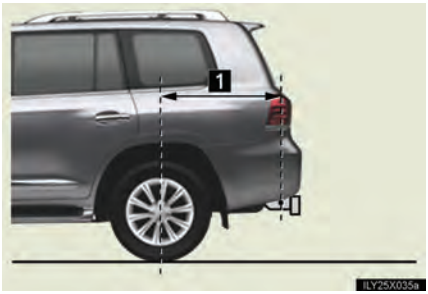
3 Shank length

Protrudes beyond the bottom of the lock washer and nut by at least 2 threads.

4 Shank diameter

Matches the ball mount hole diameter size.

Positions for towing hitch receiver and hitch ball



1 Hitch receiver pin hole position: 45.3 in. (1151 mm)

Connecting trailer lights



Use the wire harness stored in the rear end under the vehicle body.

Connecting and disconnecting a trailer

Stop your vehicle and a trailer in line and perform the following:

● Connecting a trailer

STEP 1 Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the "LO" (low) mode.

STEP 2 Turn off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

STEP 3 Connect a trailer.

STEP 4 Turn on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

STEP 5 Select the "N" (normal) mode with the height select switch.

When a vehicle loaded with four occupants tows a trailer of about 4000 lb. (1800 kg) with more than about 400 lb. (180 kg) tongue load, the normal mode may not be selected. However, there is no problem to continue normal driving. Drive with sufficient care because of large load.

● Disconnecting a trailer

STEP 1 Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the "LO" (low) mode. (Make sure the vehicle height is in the "LO" mode by pulling the switch to "∨" on the height select switch.)

STEP 2 Turn off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

STEP 3 Set the supporting leg of a trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 4 in. (100 mm).

STEP 4 Turn on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

STEP 5 Wait for about 20 seconds until the rear vehicle height is lowered by the automatic leveling function.

STEP 6 Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If not, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 5.

STEP 7 Move the vehicle forward in the "LO" mode where the hitch does not touch anything in the "N" (normal) mode.

STEP 8 Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the "N" mode.

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. Help to avoid an accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

- Speed limits for towing a trailer vary by state or province. Do not exceed the posted towing speed limit.
- Lexus recommends that the vehicle-trailer speed limit is 65 mph (104 km/h) on a flat, straight, dry road. Do not exceed this limit, the posted towing speed limit or the speed limit for your trailer as set forth in your trailer owner's manual, whichever is lowest. Instability of the towing vehicle-trailer combination (trailer sway) increases as speed increases. Exceeding speed limits may cause loss of control.
- Before starting out, check the trailer lights, tires and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle-trailer combination.
- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to the right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 10 mph (16 km/h) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.
- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in the trailer jackknifing and loss of vehicle control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.

- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making a turn.
- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a wider than normal turning radius.
- Slow down before making a turn, in crosswinds, on wet or slippery surfaces, etc.
  Increasing vehicle speed can destabilize the trailer.
- Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance when using engine braking, do not put the transmission in "D". Transmission shift range position must be in "5" in the "S" mode.
- Instability happens more frequently when descending steep or long downhill grades. Before descending, slow down and downshift. Do not make sudden downshifts while descending steep or long downhill grades.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.
- Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 85°F [30°C]) when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. (→P. 692)

● Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle's and the trailer's wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in "P". Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

STEP 1 Apply the brakes and keep them applied.

STEP 2 Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle's and trailer's wheels.

STEP 3 When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.

STEP 4 Apply the parking brake firmly.

STEP 5 Shift into "P" and turn off the engine.

● When restarting after parking on a slope:

STEP 1 With the transmission in "P", start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed.

STEP 2 Shift into "D" or "R" (if reversing).

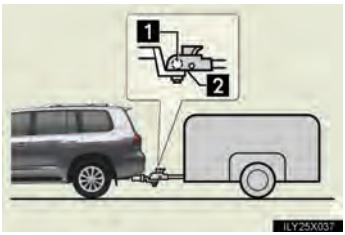
STEP 3 Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply the brakes.

STEP 4 Have someone retrieve the blocks.

Matching trailer ball height to trailer coupler height



No matter which class of tow hitch applies, for a more safe trailer hookup, the trailer ball setup must be the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.



1 Coupler

2 Trailer ball

Before towing

Check that the following conditions are met:

- Ensure that your vehicle's tires are properly inflated. (→P. 706)
- Trailer tires are inflated according to the trailer manufacturer's recommendation.
- All trailer lights work as required by law.
- All lights work each time you connect them.
- The trailer ball is set at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.
- The vehicle remains level when a loaded or unloaded trailer is hitched. Do not drive if the vehicle is not level, and check for improper tongue weight, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
- The trailer cargo is securely loaded.
- The rear view mirrors conform to all applicable federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

■ **AVS (adaptive variable suspension system)**

The suspension can be switched for improvement in driveability. (→P. 257)

■ **Break-in schedule**

If your vehicle is new or equipped with any new power train components (such as an engine, transmission, differential or wheel bearing), Lexus recommends that you do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has been driven for over 500 miles (800 km).

After the vehicle has been driven for over 500 miles (800 km), you can start towing. However, for the next 500 miles (800 km), drive the vehicle at a speed of less than 50 mph (80 km/h) when towing a trailer, and avoid full throttle acceleration.

■ **Maintenance**

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".)
- Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 600 miles (1000 km) of trailer towing.

■ **If trailer sway occurs**

One or more factors (crosswinds, passing vehicles, rough roads, etc.) can adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing instability.

- If trailer swaying occurs:
  - Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead.
    Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
  - Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
    Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize.

● After the trailer swaying has stopped:

- Stop in a safe place. Get all occupants out of the vehicle.
- Check the tires of the vehicle and the trailer.
- Check the load in the trailer.
  Make sure the load has not shifted.
  Make sure the tongue weight is appropriate, if possible.
- Check the load in the vehicle.
  Make sure the vehicle is not overloaded after occupants get in.

If you cannot find any problems, the speed at which trailer swaying occurred is beyond the limit of your particular vehicle-trailer combination.
Drive at a lower speed to prevent instability. Remember that swaying of the towing vehicle-trailer increases as speed increases.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Trailer towing precautions

● To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions. Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury. Vehicle stability and braking performance are affected by trailer stability, brake setting and performance, and the hitch. Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer.

● Set the vehicle height to the "LO" mode and turn off the 4-Wheel AHC when you connect a trailer, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid accident or injury

- Do not exceed the TWR, unbraked TWR, GCWR, GVWR or GAWR.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 2000 lb. (907 kg), a sway control device with sufficient capacity is required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 5000 lb. (2268 kg), a weight distributing hitch with sufficient capacity is required.
- Adjust the tongue weight within the appropriate range. Place heavier loads as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- Do not exceed 65 mph (104 km/h), the posted towing speed limit or the speed limit for your trailer as set forth in your trailer owner's manual, whichever is lowest. Slow down sufficiently before making a turn, in crosswinds, on wet or slippery surface, etc. to help avoid an accident. If you experience a vehicle-trailer instability from reducing a certain speed, slow down and make sure you keep your vehicle speed under the speed of which you experience the instability.
- Do not make jerky, abrupt or sharp turns.
- Do not apply the brakes suddenly as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of vehicle control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue weight capacities.
- Do not use cruise control when towing.
- Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts while descending steep or long downhill grades.
- Vehicle-trailer instability is more likely on steep long down hills. Before descending steep or long downhill grades, slow down and downshift. Do not make sudden downshifts when descending steep or long downhill grades. Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.

⚠ CAUTION

Hitch

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be physically capable of towing a higher weight, the operator must determine the maximum weight rating of the particular hitch assembly and never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer-hitch. Exceeding the maximum weight rating set by the trailer-hitch manufacturer can cause an accident resulting in death or serious personal injuries.

When towing a trailer

Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to any applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.

- If the gross trailer weight exceeds unbraked TWR, trailer brakes are required. Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to all applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.
- Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle's braking effectiveness.
- Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

⚠ NOTICE

When installing a trailer hitch

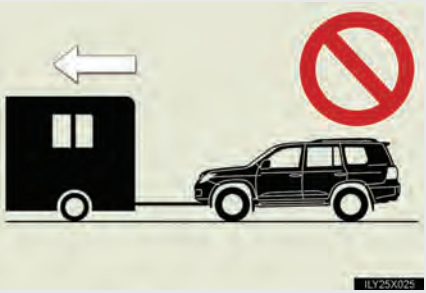
Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.

Do not directly splice trailer lights

Do not directly splice trailer lights. Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



NOTICE

To avoid serious damage to your vehicle

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

3-1. Using the touch screen
Touch screen 320
Setting the touch screen 326

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
Front air conditioning system 338
Rear air conditioning system 349
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers 353
Windshield wiper de-icer 354

3-3. Using the audio system
Audio system type 355
Using the radio 360
Using the CD/DVD player 370
Playing an audio CD 373
Playing MP3 and WMA discs 377
Playing DVD video/audio (with DVD player) 381
Playing a video CD (with DVD player) 395
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information 398
Listening to Bluetooth® audio 408
Listening to a USB memory/iPod 416
Optimal use of the audio/video system 426
Using the AUX port 428
Using the steering wheel audio switches 429

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Rear seat entertainment system features 433
Using the radio 441
Using the DVD player 442
Playing an audio CD/CD text 443
Playing WMA/MP3 discs 444
Playing DVD video/audio 445
Playing a video CD 455
DVD player and DVD video disc information 459
Using the video mode 461
Changing other settings 463

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 465
Using a Bluetooth® phone 471
Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone) 485

3-6. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 514
- Interior lights 515
- Personal lights 516
- Luggage compartment light 517

3-7. Using the storage features

List of storage features 518
- Glove box 519
- Console box 520
- Overhead console 521
- Cup holders 522
- Bottle holders 523
- Auxiliary boxes 524

3-8. Other interior features

Cool box 526
Sun visors 528
Vanity mirrors 529
Ashtrays 530
Cigarette lighters 531
Power outlets 532
Heated steering wheel 534
Climate control seats/seat heaters 536
Armrest 539
Floor mats 540
Luggage compartment features 542
Garage door opener 544
Safety Connect 550

Touch screen

By touching the screen with your finger, you can control the audio system and air conditioning system, and adjust the screen display etc.

Press SETUP or INFO PHONE to display the following screen.

Display

▶ "Setup" screen



▶ "Information" screen



Reference

▶ Display buttons

Button	Page
"CLIMATE"	P. 338
"AUDIO"	P. 355
"MAP VOICE"/"DEST"	Navigation System Owner's Manual
"INFO PHONE" (Displaying the "Information" screen)	P. 320
"DISP" (Adjusting the display)	P. 324
"SETUP" (Displaying the "Setup" screen)	P. 326

▶ "Setup" screen

Switch	Page
"General"	P. 326
"Clock"	P. 330/ Navigation System Owner's Manual
"Voice"	P. 330/ Navigation System Owner's Manual
"Navi."	Navigation System Owner's Manual
"Phone"	P. 485
"Audio"	P. 331
"Vehicle"	P. 336/ Navigation System Owner's Manual
"Other"	Navigation System Owner's Manual

▶ "Information" screen

Switch	Page
"Phone"	P. 465
"Map Data", "Calendar", "LEXUS Insider", "XM Sports", "XM Stocks", "XM NavWeather"	Navigation System Owner's Manual

Initial screen



If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.

Subscribers will be shown the "LEXUS ENFORM" screen next.



Adjusting the display

STEP 1 Press DISP.

STEP 2 Adjust the display as desired using "-"/"+"/"R"/"G".

If you do not touch the screen for 20 seconds, the system will return to the previous screen.



	"R"	"G"
"Color"*	Red	Green
	"-"	"+"
"Tone"*	Lighter	Darker
"Contrast"	Lower	Higher
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

*: Vehicles with DVD player only, displays during DVD video/audio or video CD playback

■ **To avoid damaging the touch screen**

- Touch the screen lightly with your finger. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen and try again.
- Remove any dirt on the screen by wiping with a soft cloth. Do not use detergent.

■ **When using the touch screen**

- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the "Display" screen or remove your sunglasses.

■ **Changing between day mode and night mode**



When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims.
However, the screen can be switched to day mode by touching "Day Mode".

The screen will stay in day mode when the headlights are turned on until "Day Mode" is touched again.
The switch will not be displayed if the instrument panel light control is set to the brightest level.

■ **To turn off the display**

If "Screen Off" is touched, the screen display is turned off, and guidance is by voice only.

■ **Opening or closing the rear display (if equipped)**

Touching "Rear" opens or closes the rear display.

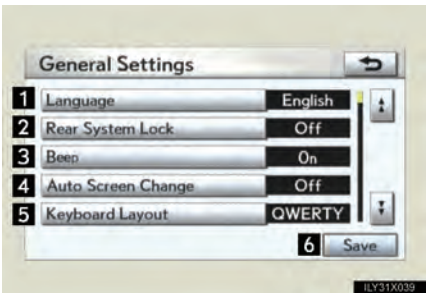
You can change the touch screen to your desired settings.

General settings

This screen is used for language selection, and for setting operation sounds and automatic screen change to on or off, etc.

Touch "General" on the "Setup" screen.

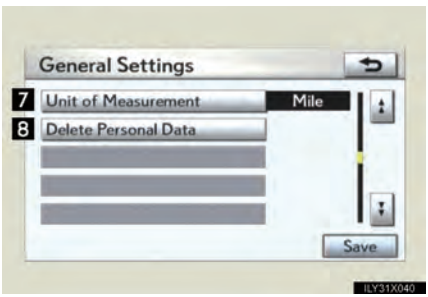
▶ Page 1



1 Select language
2 Rear seat entertainment system lock on/off (if equipped)
3 Beep on/off
4 Automatic transition on/off
5 Select keyboard layout
6 Save settings

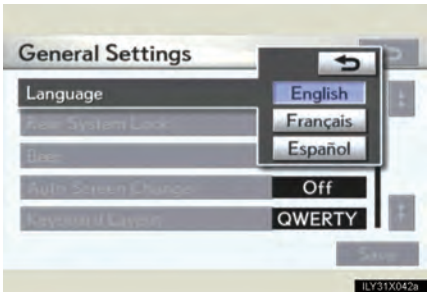
Make sure to save after changing settings.

▶ Page 2



7 Select the unit
8 Delete personal data

Select language



Select the desired language.

Rear seat entertainment system on/off

The operation lock on the rear seat entertainment system can be turned on or off.

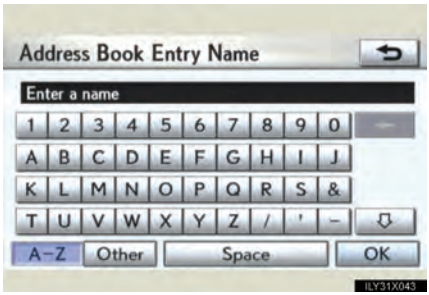
Automatic transition on/off

After 20 seconds of air conditioning or audio system use, the system will return the display to the previous screen.

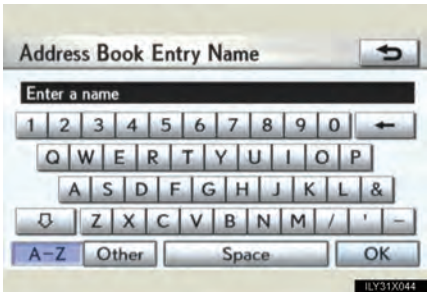
Select keyboard layout

The keyboard layout can be changed.

▶ "ABC" type



▶ "QWERTY" type



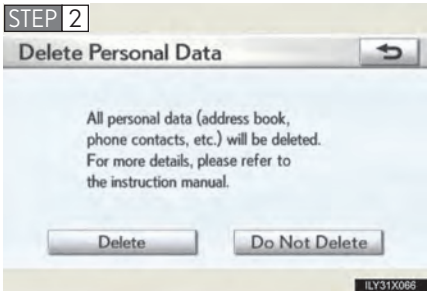
Select the unit

The measurement unit shown on the display can be changed.

■ Delete personal data

STEP 1 Touch “Delete Personal Data” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch “Delete”.

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

STEP 3 A confirmation screen will be displayed. Touch “Yes”.

The following personal data can be deleted or turned to their default settings:

- Radio preset stations
- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Voice tag data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Volume setting
- Details setting
- Maintenance conditions
- Maintenance information “off” setting
- Address book
- Areas to avoid
- Previous points
- Route guidance
- Route trace

Clock settings

Touch "Clock" on the "Setup" screen.



1 Select time zone
2 Daylight saving time on/off
3 Auto adjust clock on/off

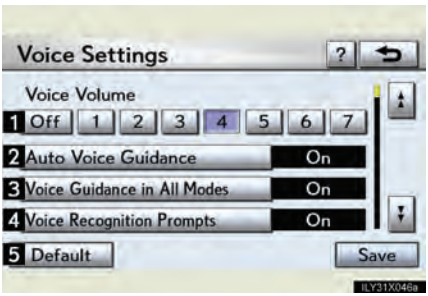
Manual adjustment

The minutes and hours can be adjusted manually when auto adjust clock is set to off.

Voice settings

Touch "Voice" on the "Setup" screen.

▶ Page 1



1 Select voice guidance volume
2 Voice guidance on/off during route guidance
3 Voice guidance on/off during audio system is in use
4 Voice recognition prompt on/off

This setting can also be changed on the "Voice Menu" screen. For details, refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

5 Restore default settings

▶ Page 2



6 Automatic recognition on/off without pressing the talk switch more than once

7 Voice guidance on/off when using the traffic information

8 Voice guidance on/off when using the XM® NavWeather

9 Select voice guidance projection

Audio settings

Touch "Audio" on the "Setup" screen.



1 Sound settings

2 Select portable player

3 Setting up Bluetooth® audio

Sound settings

Touch "Sound Settings".

Sound/DSP settings can be changed. (→P. 426)

■ Select portable player

STEP 1 Touch “Select Portable Player”.

STEP 2



A portable player can be selected for connection.

Where no player is registered, “Empty” is displayed.

When “Portable Player Info” is touched, the following screen is displayed:



“Device Name” and “Connection Method” can be changed.

● Changing the device name

STEP 1 Touch “Edit”.

STEP 2 Enter the desired name.

● Changing the connection method



Touch "From Vehicle" or "From Portable Player".

"From Vehicle": Connect the audio system to the audio player.

"From Portable Player": Connect the audio player to the audio system.

■ **Setting up Bluetooth® audio**

Touch "Bluetooth* Audio Settings".



1 Register/remove Bluetooth® audio
2 Automatic connection on/off
3 Display passcode
4 Display device name
5 Restore default settings

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

● Registering Bluetooth® audio

STEP 1 Touch “Register”.

STEP 2



Enter the passcode into the portable player.

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

● Removing Bluetooth® audio

STEP 1 Touch “Remove”.

STEP 2



Touch the player to remove.

A confirmation screen will be displayed, touch “Yes” to remove the player.

● Changing the passcode

STEP 1 Touch "Edit".

STEP 2 Enter the desired passcode.

The passcode can be between 4 and 8 characters in length, and is set to "0000" by default.

● Changing the device name

STEP 1 Touch "Edit".

STEP 2 Enter the desired name

● Restoring the default settings

STEP 1 Touch "Default".

STEP 2 A confirmation screen will be displayed, touch "Yes" to restore the default settings.

■ **When setting the connection method to "From Portable Player"**

- Connection methods differ depending on the audio player. Consult your audio player's manual.
- Automatic connection cannot be set to "On".

■ **When using Bluetooth® audio**

A confirmation screen will be displayed if an attempt is made to remove a portable player.

Touch "Yes" to disconnect and remove the player.

Vehicle settings

Touch “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.



1 Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
2 Changing customizable settings
3 Setting up intuitive parking assist

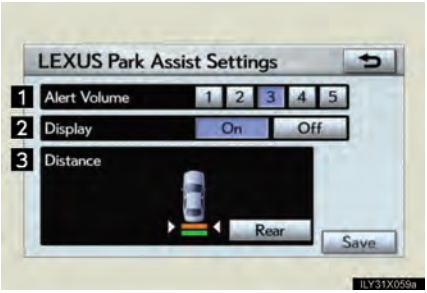
● Changing customizable settings



Various functions can be customized.

Detailed information: →P. 722

● Setting up intuitive parking assist



1 Alert volume setting

2 Display on/off

3 Alert distance setting

Touch “Rear” to change the distance for the sensors display and tone indication.

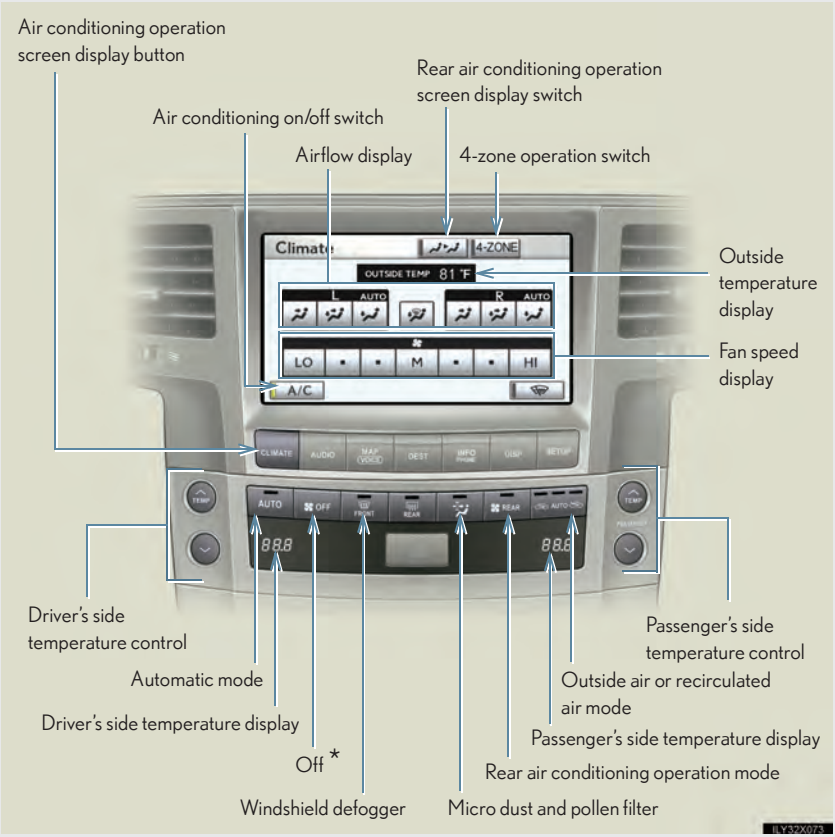
■ **Intuitive parking assist display**

When an obstacle is detected while the rear view monitor system is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the top right of the screen even if the display setting has been set to “Off”.

Front air conditioning system

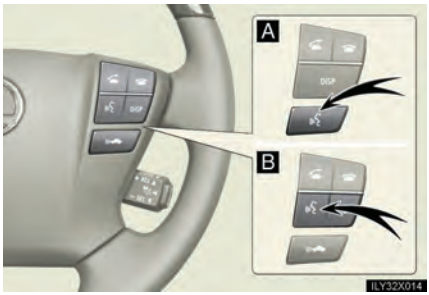
Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press CLIMATE to display the air conditioning operation screen.



*: The front air conditioning system cannot be switched off while the cool box is on. (→P. 526)

Using the voice command system



Press  or  to operate the voice command system. (→"Navigation System Owner's Manual")

A Without dynamic radar cruise control

B With dynamic radar cruise control

Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press .

➡ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

"AUTO" will be displayed on the touch screen.

STEP 2 Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➡ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press  to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the driver's and front passenger's seats can be set separately.

Adjusting the settings

Adjusting the temperature setting

Press 

to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time "4-ZONE" is touched.

Individual mode (the indicator on "4-ZONE" is on.): The temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 350) can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter individual mode.

Simultaneous mode (the indicator on "4-ZONE" is off.): Only 

or  (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

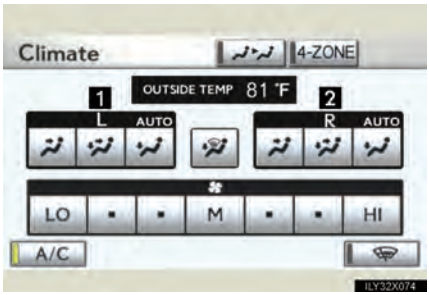
Adjusting the fan speed

Touch any switch of "LO" to "HI" (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

Press 

to turn the fan off.

Changing the air outlets

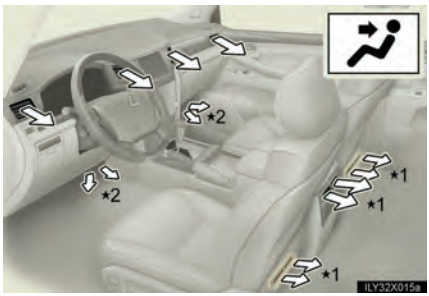


Touch any mode on the operation screen.

1 L: Left-hand front seat

2 R: Right-hand front seat

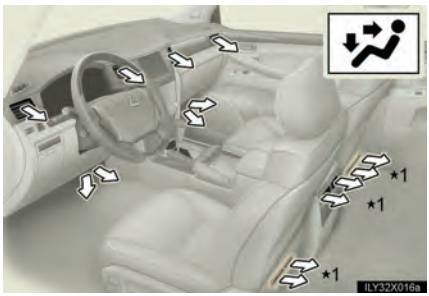
Different air outlets for the left-hand and right-hand front seats can be chosen.



Air flows to the upper body.

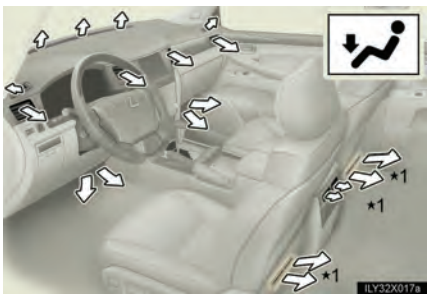
*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.

*2: Only in the automatic mode



Air flows to the upper body and feet.

*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.



Air flows to the feet.

*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.



Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches between (recycles air inside the vehicle), "AUTO" and (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

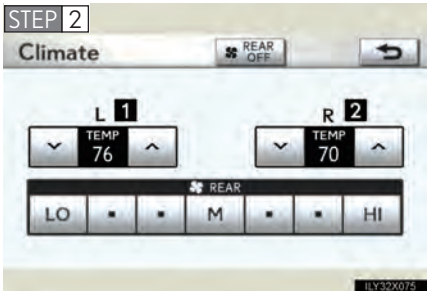
When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

Changing the rear seat settings from the front seat

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

STEP 1 Touch .

STEP 2



Touch ∧ (increase) or ∨ (decrease) on the screen. Operating the switch will enter individual mode.

1 L: Left-hand rear seat

2 R: Right-hand rear seat

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time "4-ZONE" is touched.

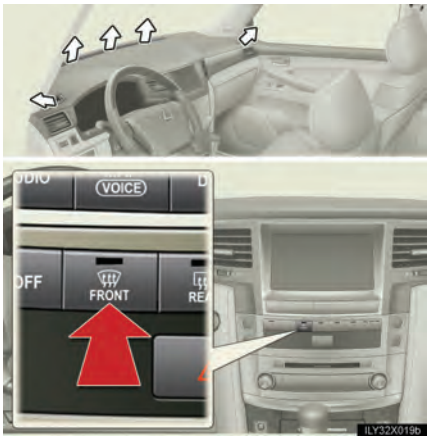
■ Adjusting the fan speed

STEP 1 Touch on the screen or press REAR.

STEP 2 Touch any switch of "LO" to "HI" (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

Touch "REAR OFF" on the screen or press REAR to turn the fan off.

Defogging the windshield



Press .

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode.

Micro dust and pollen filter



Press .

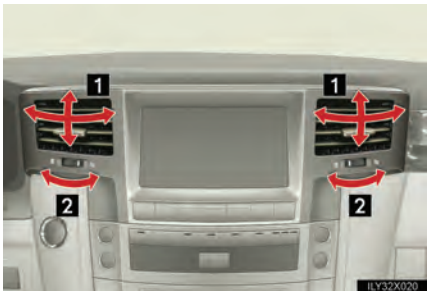
Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press  again.

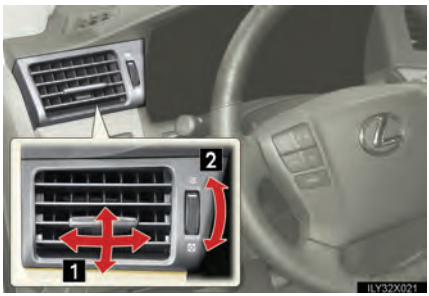
Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Front side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

■ **Using the automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- Immediately after 

is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

■ **Window defogger feature**

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.
When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning the "AUTO" mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

■ **When outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)**

The air conditioning system may not operate even when "A/C" is touched.

■ **Micro dust and pollen filter**

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur.
  - Outside air mode does not switch to recirculated air mode.
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

■ **Air conditioning odors**

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in AUTO mode.

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P. 608

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. exhaust gas sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

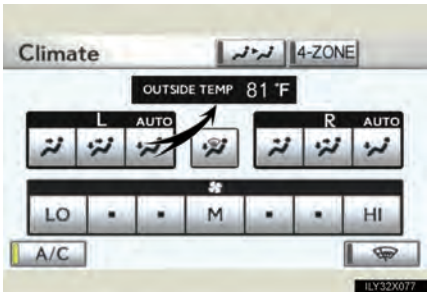
⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

Outside temperature display

Outside temperature is displayed in the screen.
The displayed temperature ranges from -40°F (-40°C) up to 122°F (50°C).



■ The outside temperature is displayed when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ When "— —" or "E" is displayed

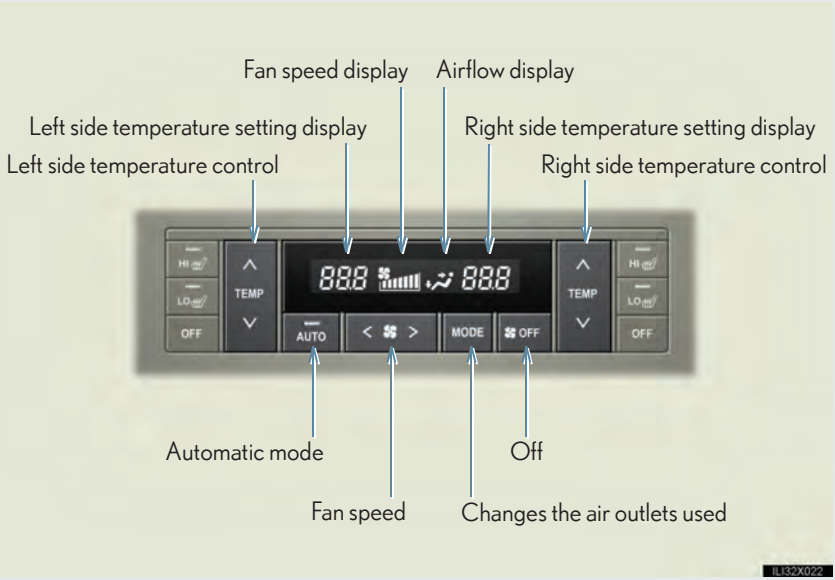
The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer

■ Display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.



Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press AUTO.

➡ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press ∧ on TEMP to increase the temperature and ∨ to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be set separately.

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press ∧ on TEMP to increase the temperature and ∨ to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be set separately.

■ Adjusting the fan speed

Press > (increase) or < (decrease) on < >.

The fan speed is shown on the display. (7 levels)

Press OFF to turn the fan off.

■ Changing the air outlets

Press MODE.

The air outlets switch each time the button is pressed.



Air flows to the upper body.



Air flows to the upper body and feet.



Air flows to the feet.

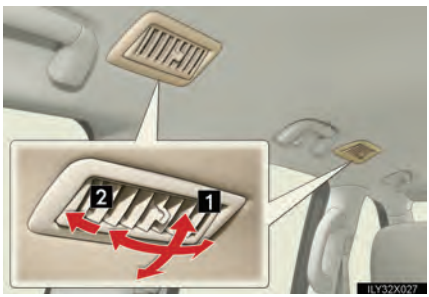
Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Rear center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Roof side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob fully to the back of the vehicle to close the vent.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.



On/off

The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed. Pressing the button again also turns the defoggers off.

The rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

CAUTION

When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Windshield wiper de-icer

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

STEP 1



Press CLIMATE.

STEP 2



On/off

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Touching the switch again also turns the de-icer off.

■ The windshield wiper de-icer can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the windshield wiper de-icer is on

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

Audio system type

CD and (optional) DVD player with changer and AM/FM radio

Press AUDIO and touch each tabs to display the audio operation screen.

▶ Type A

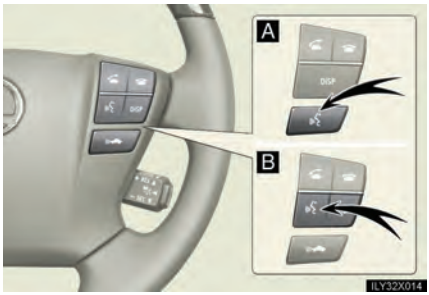


▶ Type B


DVD
Disc 1 Title 1 Chapter 1 0' 0'24"
AM FM SAT CD BT AUX USB
Top Menu
Menu
Settings
Change Discs
Full Screen
Sound
AUTO
OFF
AM
FM
DISC
AUX·USB
ILY33X189a

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 360
Using the CD/DVD player	P. 370
Playing an audio CD	P. 373
Playing MP3 and WMA discs	P. 377
Playing DVD video/audio	P. 381
Playing a video CD	P. 395
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information	P. 398
Listening to Bluetooth® audio	P. 408
Listening to a USB memory/iPod	P. 416
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 426
Using the AUX port	P. 428
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 429

Using the voice command system



Press  or  to operate the voice command system. (→"Navigation System Owner's Manual")

A Without dynamic radar cruise control

B With dynamic radar cruise control

Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

⚠ CAUTION

For vehicles sold in U.S.A. and Canada

- Part 15 of the FCC Rules

  FCC Warning:
  Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

- Laser products

  - Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes by yourself.
    This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
  - This product utilizes a laser.
    Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

NOTICE

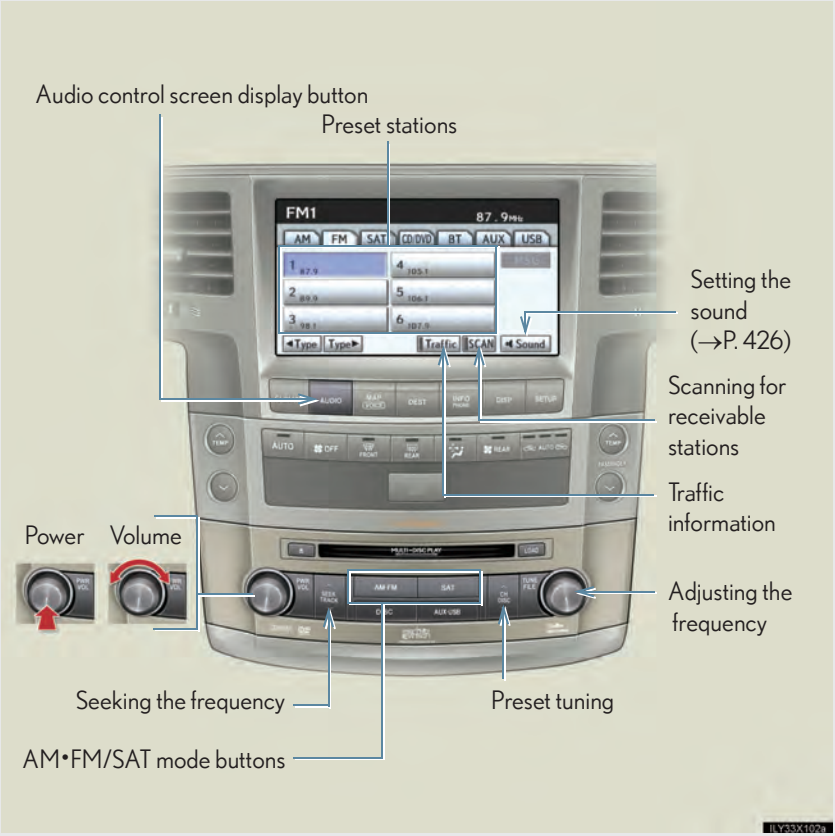
■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine off.

■ **To avoid damaging the audio system**

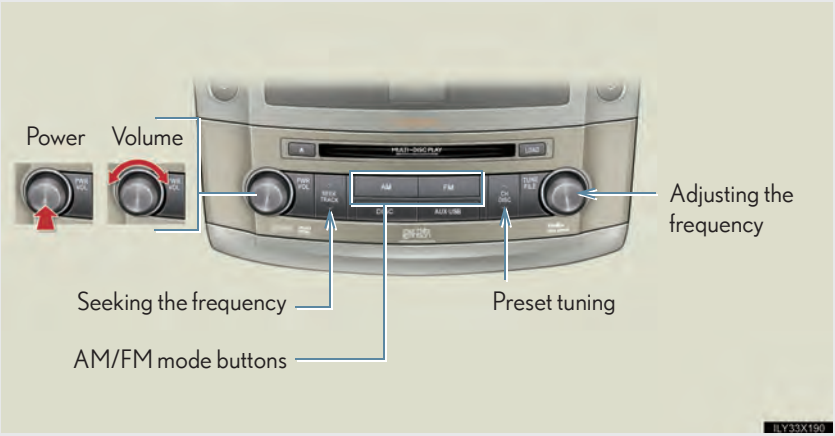
Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

▶ Type A



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

▶ Type B


Power
Volume
Adjusting the frequency
Seeking the frequency
Preset tuning
AM/FM mode buttons

Setting station presets (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

STEP 1 Search for desired stations by turning 

or pressing ∧ or ∨ on 

.

STEP 2 Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until a beep is heard.

Scanning radio stations (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

■ Scanning the preset radio stations

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen until "P.SCAN" appears.

Preset stations will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired station is reached.

■ Scanning all radio stations within range

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

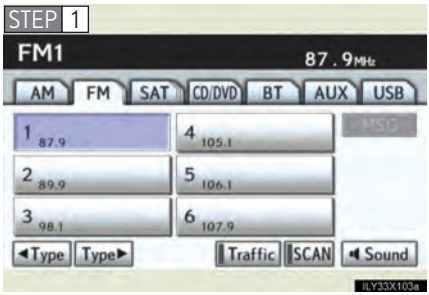
"SCAN" appears on the screen and all stations within range will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired station is reached.

RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

■ Receiving RDS broadcasts



Touch "◄ Type" or "Type ►" on the screen.

The program type changes as follows each time the switch is touched.

- "ROCK"
- "MISC" (Miscellaneous)
- "INFORM" (Information)
- "EASYLIS" (Easy listening)
- "CLS/JAZZ" (Classical music and Jazz)
- "R & B" (Rhythm and Blues)
- "RELIGION"
- "ALERT" (Emergency messages)

When a program is set, "Type Seek" appears.

STEP 2 Touch "Type Seek" on the screen.

The radio seeks or scans for stations by the relevant program type.

If no radio station of that type is found, "Nothing" appears on the screen.

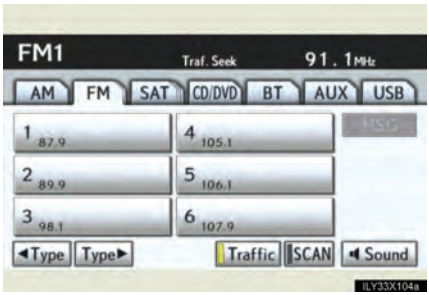
Displaying radio text messages

If "MSG" appears on the screen, a text message may be displayed.

While the vehicle is stopped, touch "MSG" to display the text message.

When you touch "Message Off", the display returns.

Traffic announcement



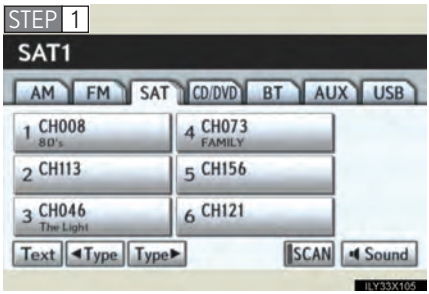
Touch "Traffic" on the screen.

"Traf. Seek" appears on the display, and the radio will start seeking any station broadcasting traffic program information.

If no traffic program station is found, "Nothing" appears on the display.

XM® Satellite Radio (if equipped)

Receiving XM® Satellite Radio



Press SAT or touch "SAT" tab on the screen.

The display changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3

STEP 2 Turn 

to select a desired channel from all the categories or press ∧ or ∨ on 

to select a desired channel in the current category.

Presetting XM® Satellite Radio channels

Select the desired channel. Touch one of the preset stations (1 - 6) and hold it until a beep is heard.

Changing the channel category

Touch "◀ Type" or "Type ▶" on the screen.

Scanning XM® Satellite Radio channels

● Scanning channels in the current category

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

"SCAN" appears on the screen.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired channel is reached.

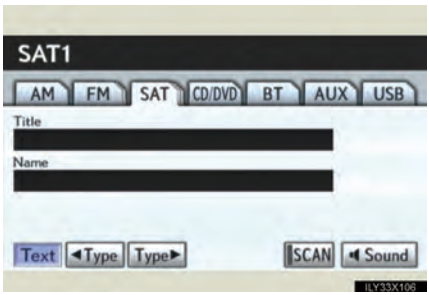
● Scanning preset channels

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen and hold it until a beep is heard.

"P.SCAN" appears on the screen.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired channel is reached.

Displaying the title and artist name



Touch "Text" on the screen.

The screen will display up to 16 characters.

Touch the button once again to return to the previous screen.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

All preset stations are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear quarter window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear quarter window.

■ **Receiving XM® Satellite Radio**

An XM® Satellite Radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provide under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous states and 10 Canadian provinces.

- XM® subscriptions
  For detailed information about XM® Satellite Radio or to subscribe:
  U.S.A.-
  Visit on the web at www.xmradio.com or call 1-877-515-3987.
  Canada-
  Visit on the web at www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-515-3987.
- Radio ID
  You will need the radio ID when activating XM® service or reporting a problem. Select "CH000" using the  dial, and the receiver's 8-character ID number will appear.
- Satellite tuner
  The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM® Satellite Radio.

*: Terms and services provided by XM® Satellite Radio are subject to change without notice.

■ **If the satellite radio does not operate normally**

If a problem occurs with the XM® tuner, a message will appear on the screen. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM® antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM® antenna cable is attached securely.
	There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.
UNAUTH	You have not subscribed to XM® Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact XM® Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact XM® Satellite Radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM® signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.

---	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.
CH UNAVL	The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM® Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987.

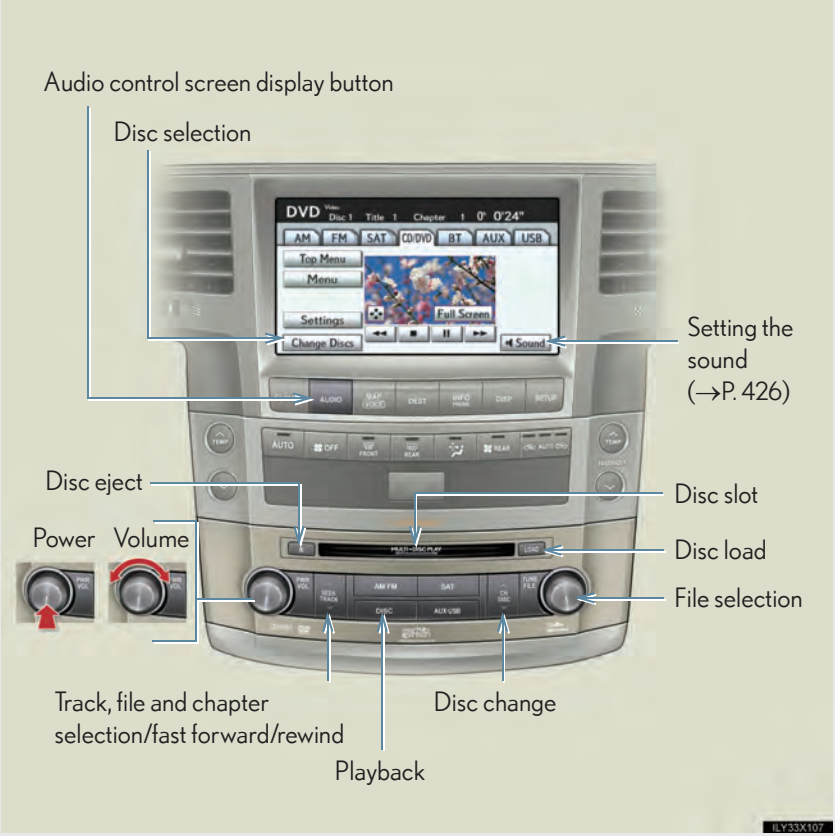
■ **Certifications for the radio tuner**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocating the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Using the CD/DVD player



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

Loading a disc

Loading a single disc

STEP 1 Press LOAD.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the CD/DVD player door opens.

Loading multiple discs

STEP 1 Press and hold LOAD until a beep is heard.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the CD/DVD player door opens.

STEP 3 After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the CD/DVD player door has opened.

STEP 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, press the LOAD or CD or DISC button.

Ejecting discs

Ejecting a disc

STEP 1 To select the disc to be ejected, touch the desired disc on the screen or press ∧ or ∨ on CH DISC.

STEP 2 Press ⏏ and remove the disc.

Ejecting all discs

Press and hold ⏏ until a beep is heard, and remove the discs.

Selecting a disc

■ To select a disc to play

STEP 1 Touch “Change Discs” on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired disc on the screen or press ∧ or ∨ on 

.

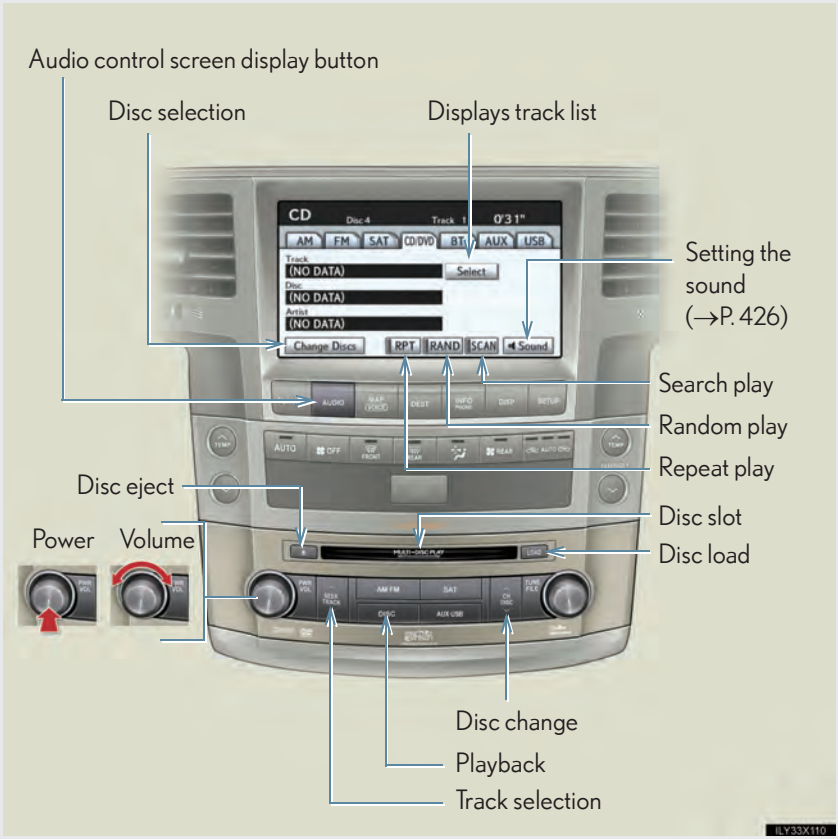
■ When loading a disc

If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

■ Vehicles with DVD player



This screen appears when the video screen is first displayed after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

Loading and ejecting discs

→P. 371

Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning tracks

■ Selecting a track

Press ∧ to move up and ∨ to move down using 

until the desired track number appears on the screen.

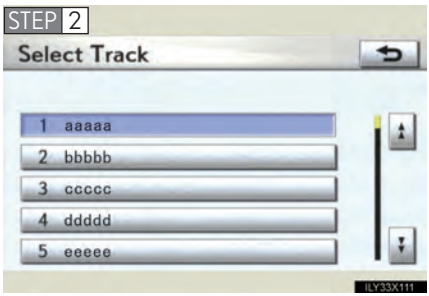
To fast forward or rewind, press and hold ∧ or ∨ on 

.

■ Selecting a track from the track list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired track number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Scanning a disc

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

"SCAN" appears on the screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired track is reached.

Selecting a disc

■ Selecting a disc to play

→P. 372

■ Scanning loaded discs

STEP 1 Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "D.SCAN" appears.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each disc will be played.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired disc is reached.

Random playback

■ Current disc

Touch "RAND" on the screen.

Songs are played in random order.

■ All discs

Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "D.RAND" appears.

Tracks on all loaded discs are played in random order.

Repeating a track or a disc

■ Repeating a track

Touch "RPT" on the screen.

■ Repeating a disc

Touch "RPT" on the screen and hold until "D.RPT" appears.

■ **Canceling random, repeat and scan playback**

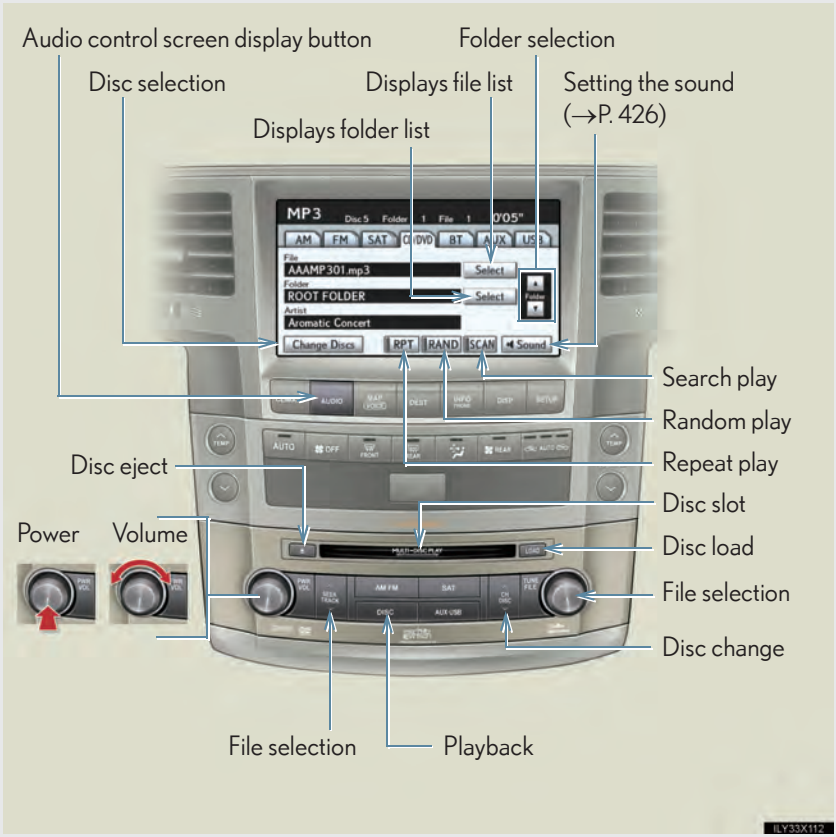
Touch “RAND”, “RPT” or “SCAN” on the screen once again.

■ **Displaying the title and artist name**

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the titles of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 letters can be displayed.

■ **Error messages**

→P. 398



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

Loading and ejecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 371

Selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 372

Selecting a folder

■ Selecting a folder

Touch "Folder ▲" or "▼" on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

■ Selecting a folder from the folder list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" for Folder on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired folder number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "FLD.SCAN" appears.

Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired folder is reached.

Selecting and scanning files

Selecting one file at a time

Turn 

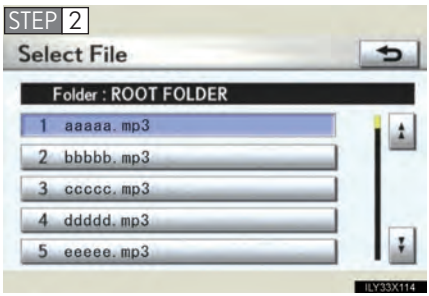
or press ∧ or ∨ on 

to select the desired file.

Selecting a file from the file list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" for File on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired file number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Selecting a desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired file is reached.

Random playback

■ **Playing files from a particular folder in random order**
Touch “RAND” on the screen.

■ **Playing all the files on a disc in random order**
Touch and hold “RAND” on the screen until “FLD.RAND” appears.

Repeat play

■ **Repeating a file**
Touch “RPT” on the screen.

■ **Repeating all of the files in a folder**
Touch and hold “RPT” on the screen until “FLD.RPT” appears.

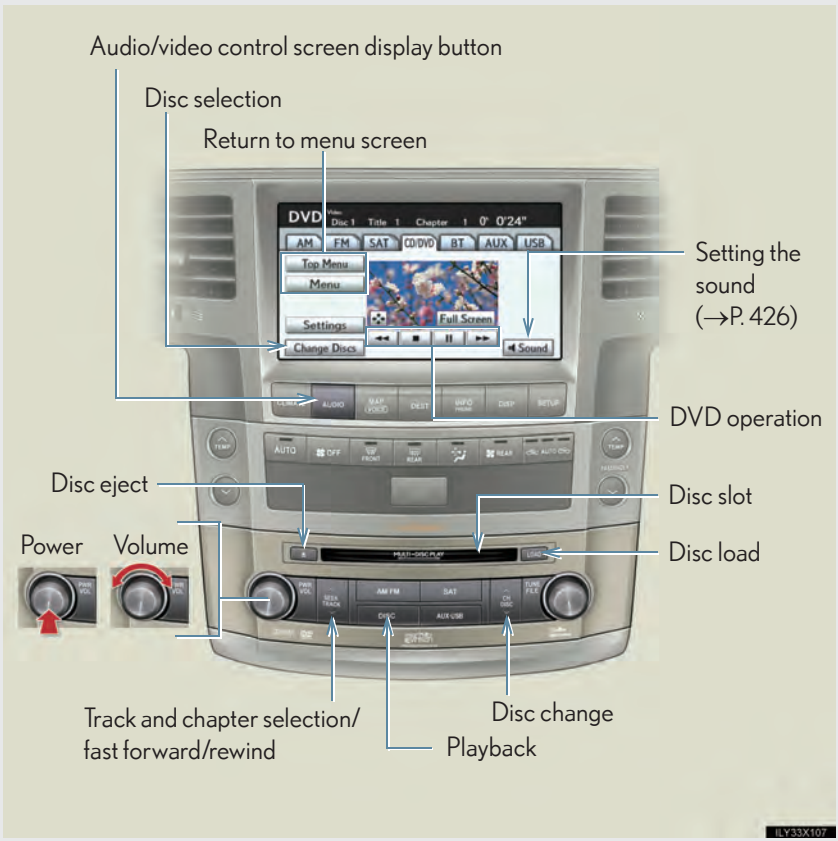
■ **Canceling random, repeat and scan playback**
Touch “RAND”, “RPT” or “SCAN” on the screen once again.

■ **Error messages**
→P. 398

Playing DVD video/audio (with DVD player)

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

When a DVD video disc or DVD audio disc is inserted while driving, the audio contents of the main feature will automatically be played. However, some discs may not be played from the main story.



If ⃠ appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Control icon screen

▶ DVD video mode



▶ DVD audio mode



1 2 Menu screen appears

3 Setting screen appears (→P. 383)

4 Selecting a disc (→P. 372)

5 Display menu control key (→P. 384)

6 Vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns

7 Rewind

8 Stop

9 Pause
Touch ▶ to play.

10 Fast forward

11 Setting the sound (→P. 426)

DVD settings

Touch "Settings" on "DVD" screen, the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



▶ DVD audio mode



1 Search by title/group number
2 Change audio language/ audio format
3 Change angle
4 Change initial setting
5 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
6 Change subtitle language
7 Change screen size
8 Video screen returns
9 Return to previous page
10 Select menu number
11 Go to next page

Loading, ejecting and selecting discs

→P. 371

Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Touch and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen or press and hold ∧ or ∨ on 

until a beep is heard.

Slow playback

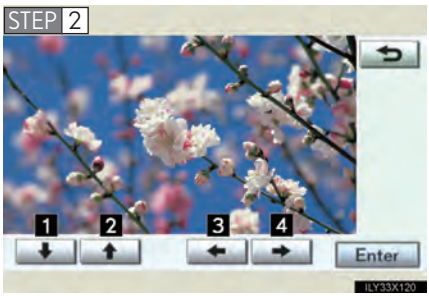
Touch ❚❚ and then touch ▶▶ on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching ▶▶.

Using the DVD menu

STEP 1 Touch "Menu" or "Top Menu" on the control icon screen.

Touch ✥ if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.

STEP 2



Enter the menu item using 1 to 4, and touch "Enter".

When you touch the any point on the screen, the controls will disappear.

To display them again, touch the any point on the screen.

⮌: Returns to the previous screen

Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

Searching for a desired screen

■ Searching by title (DVD video mode only)

STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired title number and then touch "OK".

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen

■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the group number and then touch "OK".

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen

■ Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode only, if the DVD has bonus options)

STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired bonus group number and touch "OK".

: Deletes the number

: Returns to the previous screen

Searching by chapter/track

Press ∧ or ∨ on 

to select a chapter/track.

Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode only)

STEP 1 Touch "Select Number" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired track number and touch "OK".

: Deletes the number

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Touch "Subtitle" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



Each time you touch the "Change", the next available language is selected.

"Hide": Hides the subtitles

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the audio language (DVD video only)

STEP 1 Touch "Audio" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



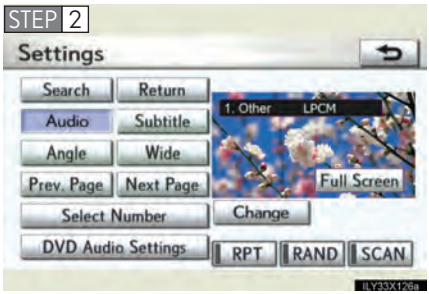
Each time you touch the "Change", the next available language is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the audio format (DVD audio only)

STEP 1 Touch "Audio" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



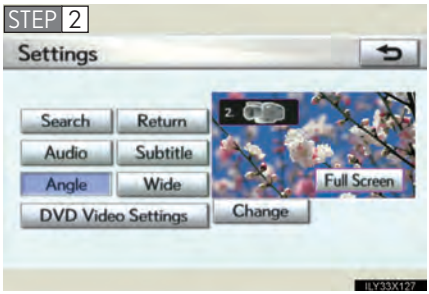
Each time you touch the "Change", the next available audio format is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the angle (if the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Touch "Angle" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



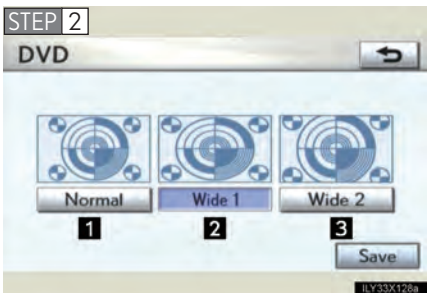
Each time you touch the "Change", the next available angle is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing screen size

STEP 1 Touch "Wide" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired display. After setting, touch "Save".

1 Displays a 3 : 4 screen, with either side in black

2 Widens the 3 : 4 screen horizontally to fill the screen

3 Widens the 3 : 4 screen vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the screen

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the page (DVD audio only)

Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” on the “Settings” screen to change the page.

Initial DVD setup

The initial settings can be changed.

■ Displaying “Setup Menu” screen

STEP 1 Touch “DVD Video Settings” or “DVD Audio Settings” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2 Touch the setting to be changed.

▶ Page 1



After you change the settings, touch “Save”.

“Default”: Restores default settings

: Returns to the previous screen

▶ Page 2



■ **Setting audio language (DVD video only)**

STEP 1 Touch "Audio Language".

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 392)

■ **Setting subtitle language**

STEP 1 Touch "Subtitle Language".

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 392)

■ **Setting menu language**

STEP 1 Touch "DVD Language".

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 392)

■ **Setting angle mark**

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

STEP 1 Touch "Angle Mark".

STEP 2 Select "On" or "Off".

■ **Parental lock (DVD video only)**

STEP 1 Touch "Parental Lock".

STEP 2 Input the 4-digit personal code and then touch "OK".

If you enter wrong numbers, touch ⬅ to delete the numbers.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 401)

■ **Setting the auto start**

Discs that are inserted while the vehicle is in motion will automatically start playing.

STEP 1 Touch "Auto Start".

STEP 2 Select "On" or "Off".

Certain discs may not play if you set to "On".

■ **Setting sound dynamic range (DVD video only)**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Touch "Sound Dynamic Range".

STEP 2 Select the desired level.

■ **Entering a language code**

If you touch "Other" on the "Select Audio Language" screen, "Select Subtitle Language" screen or "Select DVD Language" screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.

Input the 4-digit language code and then touch "OK".

⬅: Deletes the last input digit

↩: Returns to the previous screen

● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scots-Gaelic	1114	Kannada

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto-Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sangho	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo-Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tonga
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

■ **When a rear passenger selects set up menu**

Follow the directions on the warning screen that is displayed.

Under the same condition, the rear passenger can cancel the set up operation from the front seat.

■ **Rear system lock**

→P. 327

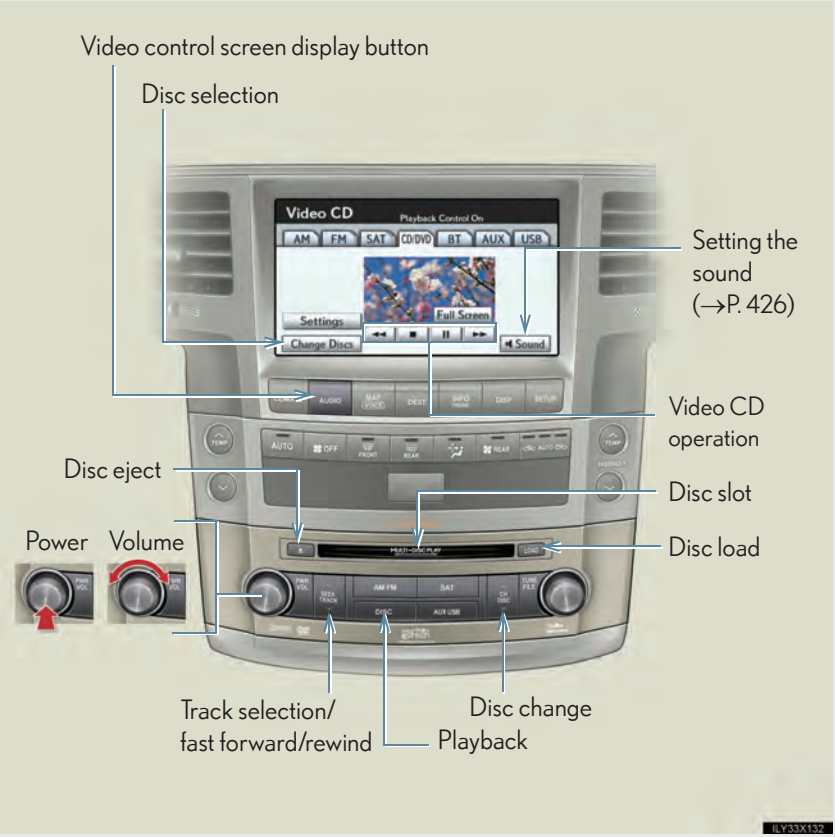
■ **Error messages**

If "Region Code Error" is displayed, check if the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 398

Playing a video CD (with DVD player)

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.



Settings screen

Touch “Settings” on the “Video CD” screen, the following screen appears.



1 Change sound multiplex
2 Return to previous page
3 Search by track number (→P. 385)
4 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.
5 Change screen size
6 Go to next page

If ⃠ appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Loading, ejecting and selecting discs

→P. 371

Fast forwarding/rewinding a video CD

Touch and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen or press and hold ∧ or ∨ on SEEK TRACK until a beep is heard.

Slow playback

Touch ❚❚ and then touch ▶▶ on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching ▶▶.

Using the video CD menu

Touch “Return” on the “Settings” screen.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Touch “Main/Sub” on the “Settings” screen. The mode cycles through each time the switch is touched.

“Main/Sub” → “Main” → “Sub”



Changing the page

▶ Disc menu displaying
Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” to change the previous/next page.

▶ While playing the video
Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” to change the previous/next track.

Selecting a desired screen

→P. 385

■ **Error messages**

→P. 398

Error messages

Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No CD or No disc	There is no disc in the CD or DVD changer.	Insert a disc.
Check CD X or Check disc X	• The disc X is dirty or damaged. • The disc X is inserted upside down. • The disc X is not playable with the player.	• Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly. • Confirm the disc is playable with the player.
CD error or DVD error	• There is a malfunction within the system. • Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player.	• Eject the disc. • Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.
NO MUSIC FILE	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc.	Eject the disc.

DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as "ALL" or "1", you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, "Region Code Error" appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.
- The DVD player supports multi-channel sound is output.

Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates NTSC format
	Indicates the number of audio tracks
	Indicates the number of language subtitles
	Indicates the number of angles
	Indicates the screen display ratios available Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code ALL: in all countries Number: region code

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

▶ With CD player



▶ With DVD player



Discs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

■ **CD/DVD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **If discs are left inside the CD/DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD/DVD player.

■ **DVD video disc information**

● DVD video discs
A DVD video disc is a Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted “MPEG2”, one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

- Viewer restrictions
  This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

  Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

  Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

  Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
- Multi-angle option
  You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.
- Multi-language option
  You can select the subtitle and audio languages.
- Region codes
  The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. (→P. 399)
- Audio
  This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVDs. Other decoded types cannot be played.
- Title and chapter
  Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

  Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

  Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

Sound

- Dolby Digital
  Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories
  “Dolby” and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- Macrovision
  This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation.
  Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.
- DTS
  “DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater System, Inc.
  Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #’s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software.
  © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used:

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

- File names

  The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

  As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags

  ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

  The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

  WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

- MP3 and WMA playback

  When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

  Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

- Extensions

  If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

⚠ CAUTION

■ DVD video precaution

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or startled when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

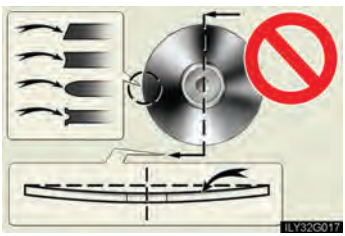
⚠ NOTICE

Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs, 3 in. (8 cm) disc adapters or Dual Disc. Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm)



- Low-quality or deformed discs



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off

NOTICE

Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

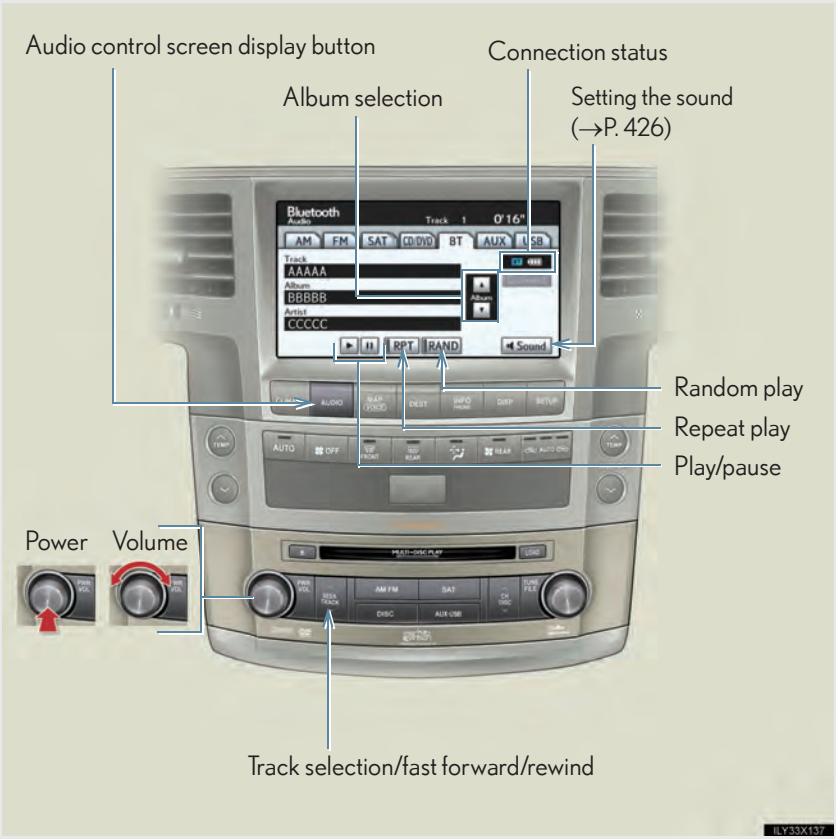
- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.



- Do not insert more than one disc at a time.

Listening to Bluetooth® audio

The Bluetooth® audio system enables users to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speaker via wireless communication.
This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.



Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the screen.



1 Connection status
2 Battery charge

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad : Not connected
Battery charge	: Full : Low

Connecting Bluetooth® audio player

To use the Bluetooth® audio system, you need to enter your portable player into the system. Once registered, you can enjoy your music on the vehicle's audio system. (→P. 333)

For the operation procedure for the portable player, consult your player's accompanying instruction manual.

When the connection method is set to "From Vehicle"

▶ When auto connection is on

When the portable player is on standby for the connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ When auto connection is off

Manually connect the portable player in accordance with the following procedure.



Touch "Connect".

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

When the connection method is set to "From Portable Player"

Operate the portable player and connect it to the Bluetooth® audio system.



Touch "Connect".

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

Playing Bluetooth® audio



Touch ▶ or ❚❚ to play/pause.

Some titles may not be displayed depending on the type of portable player.

Selecting a track/album

Selecting a track

Press ∧ to move up and ∨ to move down using 

until the desired track number appears on the screen.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold ∧ or ∨ on 

.

Selecting an album



Touch "Album ▲" or "▼" to select the desired album.

Random playback

Touch "RAND" to play the tracks on the album in random order.

To cancel the random playback, touch again.

Repeating a track

Touch "RPT" to repeat a track.

To cancel the repeat playback, touch again.

■ **When using the Bluetooth® audio system**

- In the following conditions, the system may not function.
  - The portable player is turned off
  - The portable player is not connected
  - The portable player battery is low
- There may be a delay if phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.
- Depending on the type of portable player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the instrument panel. If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the portable player, and this system does not have a charging function.

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

Portable players must correspond to the following specifications:

- Bluetooth® specification
  Ver. 1.1 or higher
  (Recommended: Ver. 2.0+EDR or higher)
- Profile
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
    (Recommended: Ver. 1.3 or higher)

However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

Please go to the website at http://www.lexus.com/ to find approved portable players for this system.

■ **Certification**

→P. 469

■ **Reconnecting the portable player**

If the portable player is disconnected with a poor reception when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable player.

If you have switched off the portable player yourself, follow the instructions below to reconnect:

- Select the portable player again
- Enter the portable player

■ **When transferring ownership of your vehicle**

Be sure to remove the registered portable player from the system.

CAUTION

While driving

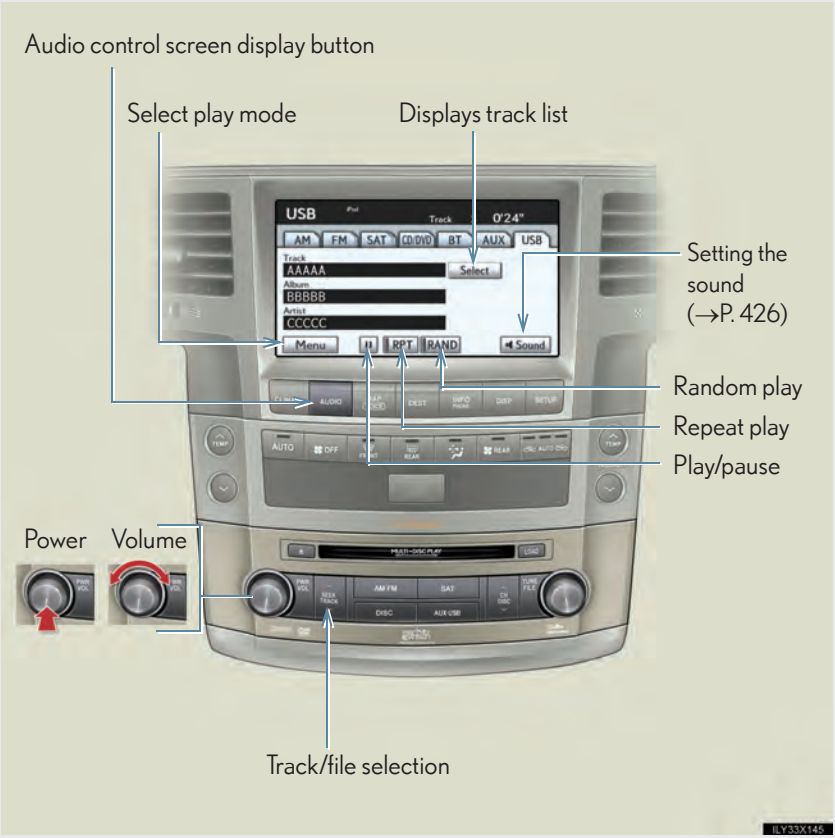
Do not use the portable player or connect the Bluetooth® system.

NOTICE

When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable player.

Connecting a USB memory or iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.



The above illustration shows an iPod screen.

Connecting the USB memory/iPod



Open the cover and connect the player.

Turn on the power of the USB memory/iPod if it is not turned on.

Playing an iPod

Play/pause

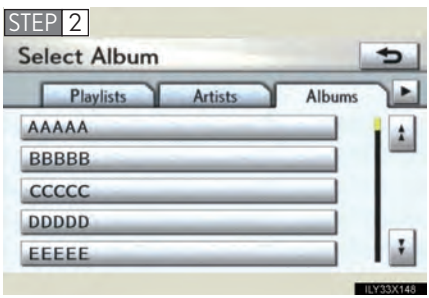


Touch ▶ or ❚❚ to play/pause.

Selecting a play mode

STEP 1 Touch "Menu" on the "USB" screen.

STEP 2



Select the desired play mode.

Selecting a folder (USB memory only)

■ Selecting a folder

Touch "Folder▲" or "▼" on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

■ Selecting a folder from the list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" for Folder on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired folder number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder (USB memory only)

Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "FLD.SCAN" appears. Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired folder is reached.

Selecting a file/track

■ Selecting one file/track at a time

Turn 

or press ∧ or ∨ on 

to select the desired file/track.

■ **Selecting a file/track from the list**

STEP 1 Touch "Select" for File/Track.

STEP 2



Touch the desired file/track number.

▲ or ▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ **Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder (USB memory only)**

Touch "SCAN" on the screen.
Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired file is reached.

Random playback

■ **Playing files/tracks from a particular folder in random order**

Touch "RAND" on the screen.

■ **Playing the all files/tracks in random order**

Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "FLD.RAND" appears.

Repeat play

■ **Repeating a file/track**

Touch "RPT" on the screen.

■ **Repeating a all of the files in a folder (USB memory only)**

Touch and hold "RPT" on the screen until "FLD.RPT" appears.

■ **Canceling random and repeat playback**

Touch “RAND” or “RPT” on the screen once again.

■ **About iPod**

- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ **iPod functions**

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. Disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve some malfunctions.

■ **USB memory functions**

Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. Disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve some malfunctions.

■ **iPod problems**

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it. For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner’s Manual.

■ **Error messages for iPod**

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.

"EMPTY": This indicates that an empty playlist is selected.

"UPDATE": This indicates that the version of the iPod is not compatible. Upgrade your iPod software to the latest version.

■ **Error messages for USB memory**

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

■ **Compatible models for iPod**

Model	Generation	Software version
iPod	5th generation	Ver. 1.2.0 or higher
iPod nano	1st generation	Ver. 1.3.0 or higher
	2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or higher
	3rd generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher
iPod touch	1st generation	Ver. 1.1.0 or higher
iPod classic	1st generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher

Depending on differences between models or software version etc., some models listed above might be incompatible with this system.
iPod 4th generation and earlier models are not compatible with this system.
iPhone, iPod mini, iPod shuffle and iPod photo are not compatible with this system.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum number of lists in device: 9999
- Maximum number of songs in device: 65535
- Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

■ USB memory

● Compatible devices
USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback.

● Compatible device formats
The following device formats can be used:

- USB communication formats: USB2.0 FS (12 mbps)
- File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 65025
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

● MP3 and WMA files
MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.
Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.
WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.
This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.
There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
  MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-160 (kbps)
  MPEG2.5: 32-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, VBR)

● File names
The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags
ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.
The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)
WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

CAUTION

While driving

Do not connect an iPod or USB memory or operate the controls.

NOTICE

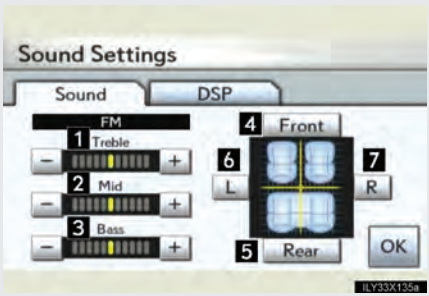
To prevent damage to the player or its terminal

- Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The temperature inside of the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the player while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.



Touch "Sound" to adjust the sound settings.

▶ "Sound" tab

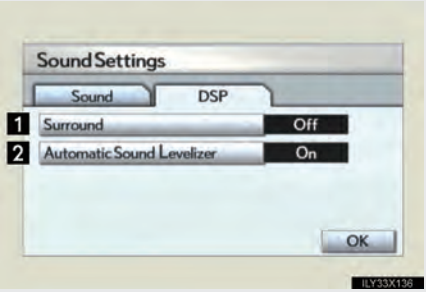


1 2 3 Touch "-" or "+" to adjust the treble, mid or bass to a level between -5 to 5.

4 5 Touch "Front" or "Rear" to adjust the front/rear audio balance to a level between F7 and R7.

6 7 Touch "L" or "R" to adjust the left/right audio balance to a level between L7 and R7.

▶ "DSP" tab



1 Surround on/off

2 Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

■ **The sound quality level is adjusted individually**

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted for the each audio mode separately.

■ **About Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)**

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed, wind noise or other noise.

Using the AUX port

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Connect the portable audio device.

STEP 2 Press AUX·USB or touch "AUX" tab on the screen.

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



1 Turns the power on, selects audio source

2 Volume

3 Radio mode: Selects a radio station

CD mode: Selects a track, file (MP3 and WMA) and disc

DVD mode*: Selects a track, chapter and disc

Bluetooth® audio mode: Selects a track and album

iPod mode: Selects a song

USB memory mode: Selects a file and folder

*: DVD player only

Turning on the power

Press  when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down for 1 second or more.

Changing the audio source

Press  when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. If a mode cannot be used, it will be skipped.

FM (1, 2)→SAT (1, 2, 3)→CD/DVD player→Bluetooth® audio→ VTR→AUX→iPod/USB memory→AM

Adjusting the volume

Press  to increase the volume and  to decrease the volume.

Hold up the switch to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press  to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press  or  to select.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold  or  on the switch until a beep is heard.

Selecting a track/file or chapter

STEP 1 Press 

to select the CD/DVD, Bluetooth® audio, iPod or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press  or  to select.

Selecting a disc

STEP 1 Press 

to select the CD/DVD mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold  or  until a beep is heard to select.

Selecting an album

STEP 1 Press 

to select Bluetooth® audio mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold  or  until a beep is heard to select.

Selecting a folder

STEP 1 Press 

to select the CD (only when MP3/WMA disc is in use) or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold  or  until a beep is heard to select.

■ **Canceling automatic selection of a radio station**

Press the same switch.

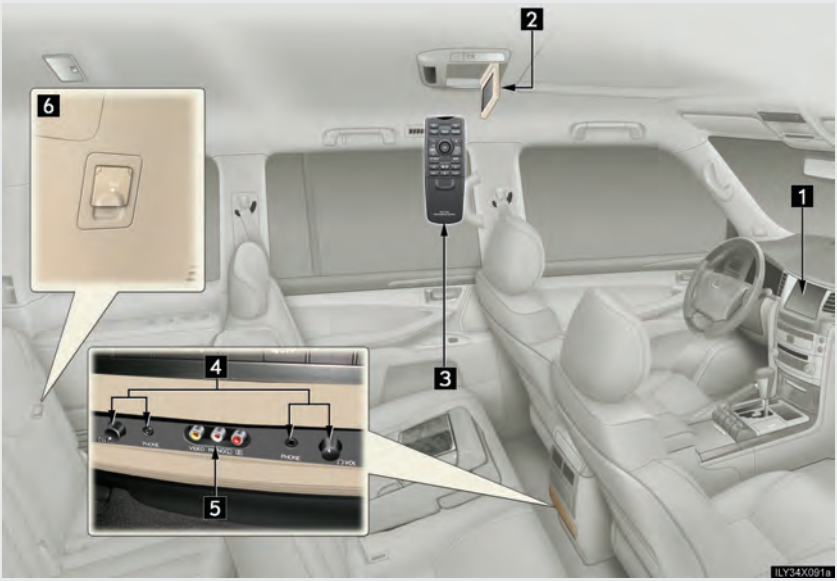
⚠ CAUTION

■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

Rear seat entertainment system features*

The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.



1 Front audio system
2 Display
3 Rear seat entertainment system controller
4 Headphone volume control knobs and headphone jacks
5 A/V input port
6 Power outlet

*: If equipped

Rear seat entertainment system controller



To use the buttons under the cover, slide the cover down.

Opening and closing the display

■ Opening and closing the display



● Open

Press “ON”, “OPEN/CLOSE”, “DVD”, “VIDEO”, “MAP”, “SOURCE” or “▶❚❚”.

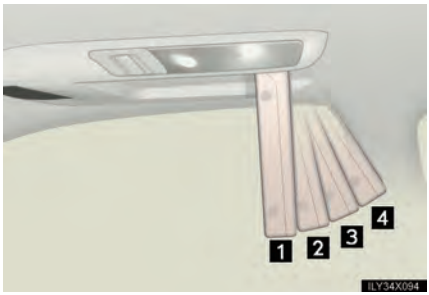
● Close

Press “OPEN/CLOSE” or “OFF”.

If the display is closed with an image shown, the image will automatically turn off. (The sound will not be turned off.)

Opening and closing operations can be performed from the front seat. (→P. 325)

Tilting the display

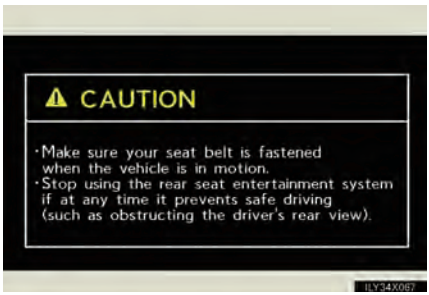


The display angles change as follows each time "TILT" is pressed.

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 1

The display angle is memorized and will be recalled when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode again.

Caution screen



This screen appears when the display is opened for the first time after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been switched to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Headphone jacks



To listen to the rear audio, open the cover and use headphones.

1 To use the headphones
Connect them to the jack.

2 To adjust the volume
Turn the knob clockwise to increase the volume. Turn the knob counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

Changing the source



Press "SOURCE" to display the audio source selection screen.



Select an audio source.

Changing the speaker output



To play the rear audio over the speakers in the vehicle, turn "Speaker Output" on.

■ **The rear seat entertainment system can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Jam protection function**

The display will stop closing and return to its previous position if something gets in the way of it closing.

■ **When appears on the screen**

It indicates that the selected icon cannot be used at this time.

■ **Rear system lock**

→P. 326

Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)



An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being depleted. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

When the controller batteries are fully depleted



Remove the depleted batteries and install new batteries.

Headphones

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Wired headphones can also be used.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

■ Volume

- Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.
- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the rear seat entertainment system is not used**

Keep the display closed.
In the event of an accident or sudden braking, an occupant may hit the opened display, resulting in injury.

■ **To prevent accidents and electric shock**

Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.

■ **When the remote controller is not used**

Stow the remote controller.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

■ **Closing the display**

Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

■ **For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada**

Laser products (→P. 358)

⚠ NOTICE

■ Cleaning the display

Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.
If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.

■ To prevent damage to the remote control

- Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.
- Do not drop or knock the remote control against hard objects.
- Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the remote control.

■ DVD player

Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the DVD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

■ Closing the display

Do not close the display using your hand. Doing so may result in a malfunction.

Using the radio



Select radio mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

Selecting a preset station

Press ∧ or ∨ on "CH DISC" until the desired station band appears on the screen.

Tuning the station

Press ▶▶| or |◀◀ until the desired station appears on the screen.

Press ▶▶| or |◀◀ until a beep is heard and the stations will be searched automatically one after another.



1 Turning on DVD mode
2 Selecting a disc

Selecting a disc



Press ∧ or ∨ on "CH DISC" until the desired slot number appears on the screen.

- Audio CD, CD text →P. 443
- MP3/WMA disc →P. 444
- DVD video/audio →P. 445
- Video CD →P. 455

Playing an audio CD/CD text

Selecting a track



Press ▶▶| or |◀◀ until the desired track number appears on the screen.

Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

Press and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀.

Selecting a file



Press ▶▶| or |◀◀ until the desired file number appears on the screen.

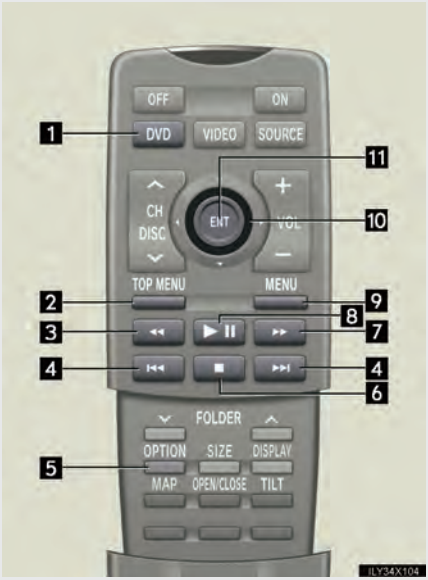
Selecting a folder

Press ∧ or ∨ on "FOLDER" until the desired folder number appears on the screen.

Fast forwarding or rewinding a file

Press and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀.

Controller

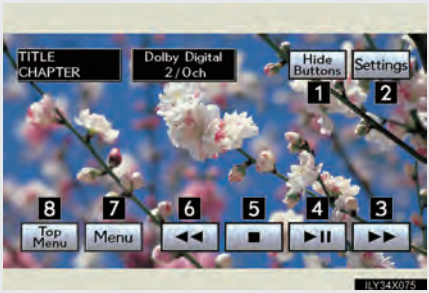


1. Turning on the DVD mode
2. Turning on the title selection screen
3. Rewinding a disc
4. Selecting a chapter/track
5. Turning on the control icon screen
6. Stopping a disc
7. Fast forwarding a disc
8. Playing/pausing a disc
9. Turning on the menu screen
10. Selecting an icon
11. Inputting the selected icon

Control icon screen

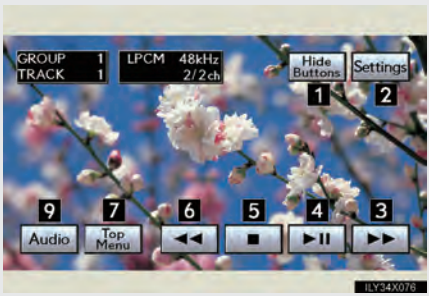
Press "OPTION" if no icons are shown while watching a DVD video/audio, and the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



1 Hide the buttons
2 Setting screen appears (→P. 452)
3 Fast forward
4 Play/pause
5 Stop
6 Rewind
7 8 Menu screen appears
9 Change audio format

▶ DVD audio mode

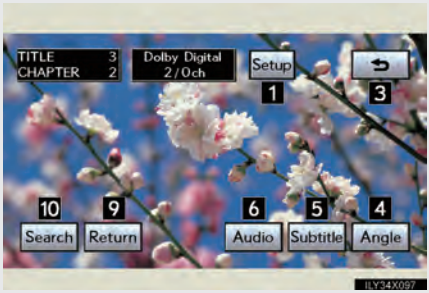


If ⃠ appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

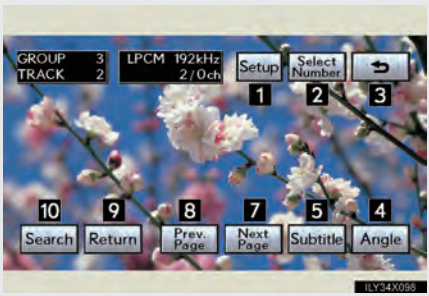
Settings screen

Select “Settings” on the control icon screen, the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



▶ DVD audio mode



1 Change initial setting
2 Search by menu number
3 Return to previous screen
4 Change angle
5 Change subtitle language
6 Change audio format
7 Go to next page
8 Return to previous page
9 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
10 Search by title/group number

Turning on or off the control icons

Press “OPTION” to turn on the control icons.

Press “OPTION” once again or select “Hide Buttons” to turn off the control icon.

Turning on the title selection screen

Press “TOP MENU” or select “Top Menu” to turn on the title selection screen. For the operation of the title selection screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Turning on the menu screen (DVD video mode only)

Press “MENU” or select “Menu” to turn on the menu screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Perform either of the following:

- Select ▶▶ or ◀◀ by pressing and holding ENT.
- Press and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀.

Slow playback

Select ❚❚ and then select ▶▶. Video is played slowly when you select ▶▶ by pressing and holding ENT.

Returning to the previous screen

Select “Return” to return to the previous screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Searching for a desired screen

■ Searching by title (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Select “Search” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired title number and then select “OK”.

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen

■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Select “Search” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Input the group number and then select “OK”.

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen

■ **Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode only, if the DVD has bonus options)**

STEP 1 Select “Search” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired bonus group number and select “OK”.

: Deletes the number

: Returns to the previous screen

■ **Searching by chapter/track**

Press ▶▶| or |◀◀ to select a chapter/track.

■ **Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode only)**

STEP 1 Select “Select Number” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired menu number on the screen and select “OK”.

: Deletes the number

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Select “Subtitle” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2



Select “Subtitle”.

Each time you press ENT, the next available language is selected.

“Hide”: Hides the control icons

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the audio language (DVD video only)

STEP 1 Select "Audio" on the control icon screen.

STEP 2



Select "Audio".

Each time you press ENT, the next available language is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the audio format (DVD audio only)

STEP 1 Select "Audio" on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Select "Audio".

Each time you press ENT, the next available audio format is selected.

:Returns to the previous screen

Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Select "Angle" on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Select "Angle".

Each time you press ENT, the next available angle is selected.

:Returns to the previous screen

Initial DVD setup

■ Displaying “Setup Menu” screen

STEP 1 Select “Setup” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Select the setting to be changed.

▶ Page 1



After you change the settings, select “OK”.

“Default”: Restores default settings

“Page 2”: Go to page 2

: Returns to the previous screen

▶ Page 2



Setting audio language

Select "Audio Language" to select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 454)

Setting subtitle language

Select "Subtitle Language" to select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 454)

Setting menu language

Select "DVD Language" to select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 454)

Setting angle mark

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

Select "Angle Mark" to select angle options on or off.

Parental lock

STEP 1 Select "Parental Lock".

STEP 2 Input the 4-digit password and then select "OK".

If you enter wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 401)

■ **Setting sound dynamic range**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

Select “Sound Dynamic Range” to select the desired level.

■ **Entering a language code**

If you select “Other” on the “Select Audio Language” screen, “Select Subtitle Language” screen or “DVD Language” screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.

Input the 4-digit language code and then select “OK”.

: Deletes the last input digit

: Returns to the previous screen

● Language codes

→P. 392

■ **Error messages**

If “Region Code Error” is displayed, check if the region code printed on the DVD matches the player’s region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 398

Playing a video CD

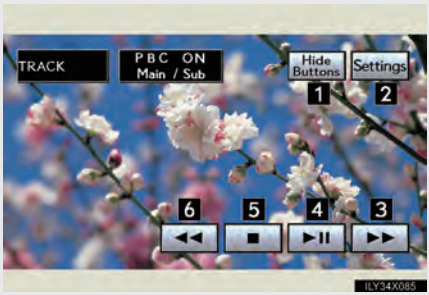
Controller



1 Rewinding a disc
2 Selecting a track
3 Turning on the control icon screen
4 Stopping a disc
5 Fast forwarding a disc
6 Playing/pausing a disc
7 Selecting an icon
8 Inputting the selected icon

Control icon screen

Press “OPTION” if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and the following screen appears.

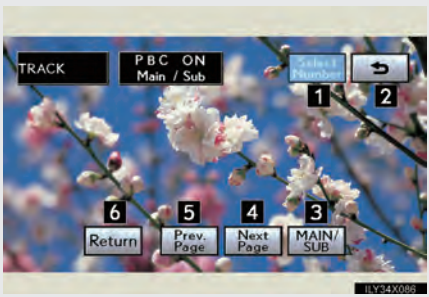


1 Hide the buttons
2 Setting screen appears
3 Fast forward
4 Play/pause
5 Stop
6 Rewind

If ⃠ appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Settings screen

Select “Settings” on the control icon screen, and the following screen appears.



1 Select menu number
2 Return to previous screen
3 Change sound multi-plex
4 Go to next page
5 Return to previous page
6 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there

Fast forwarding/rewinding the video CD

Perform either of the following:

- Select ▶▶ or ◀◀ by pressing and holding .
- Press and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀.

Slow playback

Select ❚❚ and then select ▶▶. Video is played slowly when you select ▶▶ by pressing and holding .

Using the video CD menu

Select "Return".

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

Selecting a desired screen

Selecting a menu number

STEP 1 Select “Select Number” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired menu number on the screen and select “OK”.

: Deletes the number

: Returns to the previous screen

Searching manually

Select “Prev. Menu” or “Next Menu” on the screen, or press ▶▶| or |◀◀ until the desired screen appears.

Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Select “Main/Sub” on the control icon screen. The mode cycles through each time the ENT is pressed.

“Main/Sub” → “Main” → “Sub”

■ Error messages
→P. 398

■ DVD video discs
→P. 399

■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs
→P. 399

■ Discs that can be used
→P. 400

■ DVD video disc information
→P. 400

■ Sound
→P. 402

■ MP3 and WMA files
→P. 402

⚠ CAUTION

■ DVD video precaution

→P. 405

⚠ NOTICE

■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

→P. 406

■ Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

Using the video mode



Press “VIDEO” to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio-video equipment to the A/V input port.

Using the port



Open the cover.

The A/V input port is composed of 3 input ports.

Yellow: Image input port

White: Left channel audio input port

Red: Right channel audio input port

Changing to PAL format



Press “DISPLAY”.



If the video does not appear, turn “PAL VIDEO” on.

“PAL VIDEO” will be displayed when PAL format equipment is connected to the A/V input port.

A/V input port

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input port. For details, refer to the manufacturer’s instructions.

Power outlet

The power outlet is used to connect the audio-video equipment. (→P. 532)

NOTICE

When the A/V input port is not in use

Keep the A/V input port cover closed.
Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or a short circuit.

Setting the display mode



Pressing "SIZE" changes the display modes sequentially as follows:

Normal→Wide 1→Wide 2

Adjusting the screen



Press "DISPLAY".

Select the brightness, contrast, tone or color, and make adjustments.

Press "DISPLAY" or ENT to input it.

	"R"	"G"
"Color"	Red	Green
	"-"	"+"
"Tone"	Lighter	Darker
"Contrast"	Lower	Higher
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

Automatic closing of the rear display



Press “DISPLAY”.

If “Auto Close” is on, the display will automatically close when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to OFF.
The display will automatically open when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Displaying the map screen



Press “MAP”.

The map screen will appear.

Hands-free system (for cellular phone)

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows a mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and outgoing/incoming calls.

The illustrations of the hands-free system screens shown here may slightly vary depending on the type of the system.

Telephone switch



1 Off hook switch
- Sending
- Receiving
- "Phone" screen display

2 On hook switch
- End call

Microphone



You can use the microphone when talking on the phone.

The person you are speaking to can be heard from the front speakers.

To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 472)

Status display

You can check indicators such as signal strength and battery charge on the “Phone” screen.



1 Connection status
2 Battery charge
3 Call area
4 Signal strength

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad : Not connected
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty
Call area	“Rm”: Roaming area “Hm”: Home area
Signal strength	Excellent ⟷ Poor

■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If the air conditioning is set to high
  - There is an effect from the network of the cellular phone

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the mobile phone is switched off
- If you are outside service range
- If the mobile phone is not connected
- If the mobile phone's battery is low

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the display. If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/Signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

■ **When using Bluetooth® audio and hands-free system at the same time**

The following problems may occur.

- The Bluetooth® connection may be cut.
- Noise may be heard on the Bluetooth® audio playback.

■ **About the phonebook in this system**

The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Phonebook data
- Voice tag
- All of call history
- Speed dial

When you delete the phone, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

■ **When you release your car**

Be sure to initialize your data. (→P. 329)

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

This system supports the following service.

- Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 2.0+EDR or higher)
- Profiles
  - HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.5 or higher)
  - OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1
  - PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone, and take OPP or PBAP service individually.

Please go to "http://www.lexus.com/" to find approved Bluetooth® phones for this system.

■ **Certification for the hands-free system**

FCC ID: AJDK021

IC: 775E-K021

MADE IN JAPAN

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device. This Category II radiocommunication device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-310.

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Exposure. This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Caution while driving

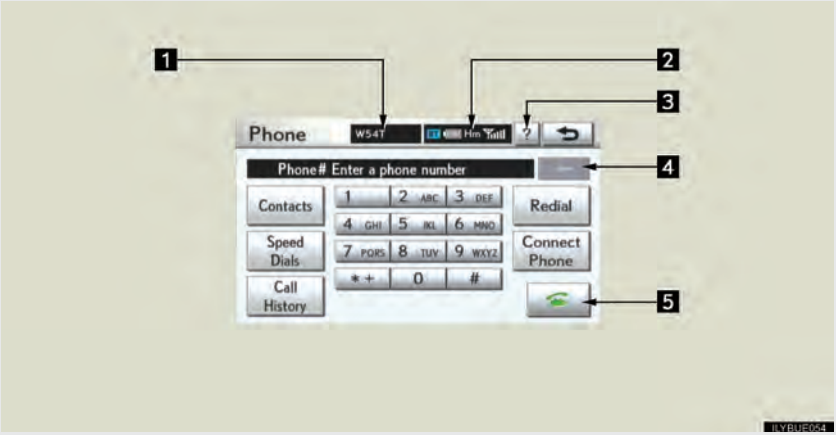
Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.

⚠ NOTICE

When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your mobile phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

Using a Bluetooth® phone



1 Device name
2 Bluetooth® connection status
3 Help icon
4 Character deletion
5 Make a call

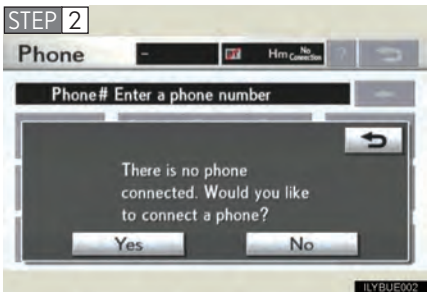
To display the screen shown above, press INFO PHONE, and touch "Phone" on the "Information" screen.

Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 4 phones in the system.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2



Touch "Yes".

STEP 3



Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

Bluetooth® phone connection

There are two connection methods available — automatic and manual.

▶ Automatic



When you register your phone, auto connection will be activated. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone on the place where connection can be established.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will search for a nearby cellular phone you have registered. Next, the system automatically connects with the most recent of the phones connected to in the past. Then, the connection result is displayed.

▶ Manual

When the auto connection has failed or “Handsfree Power” is turned off, you must connect Bluetooth® manually.

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2



Touch “Connect Phone”.

STEP 3



Touch “Handsfree Power”, or touch the phone to connect.

STEP 4



The “Connect Bluetooth*” screen is displayed.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone**

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.
If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, it must be connected manually, or the phone must be re-selected or re-entered.

■ **Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

- Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.
- It may take time to connect.

■ **Help icon**

When "?" is displayed on the screen, an explanation of the function can be displayed.

To display the explanation of the function, touch "?" and choose the desired function.

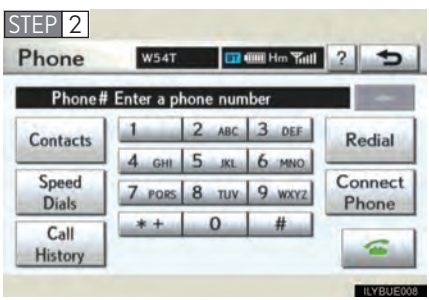
Making a call

Once the Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

■ Dialing

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2



Input the phone number.

To delete the inputted phone number, touch ←.

To dial the last inputted phone number, touch "Redial".

STEP 3 Touch or press on the steering wheel.

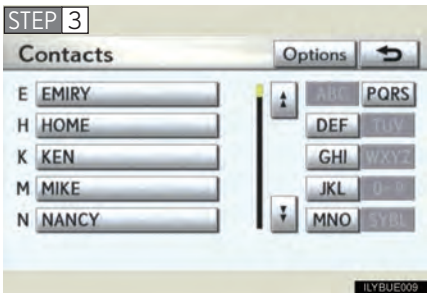
Dialing from the phonebook

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your mobile phone. The system has one phonebook for each telephone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in each phonebook. (→P. 492)

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3

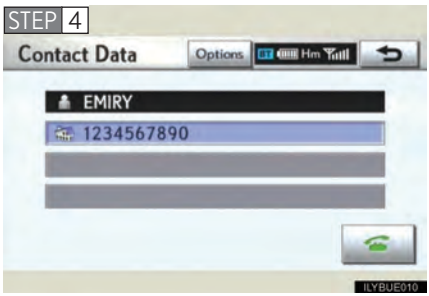


Choose the desired data to call from the list.

If the phonebook is empty, a message will be displayed.

If you want to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone, touch "Yes".

STEP 4



Choose the number and then touch or press on the steering wheel.

Calling using speed dial

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phonebook. (→P. 492)

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3



Select the desired tab and choose the desired number to make a call.

Dialing from history

You can call using the call history which has the 4 functions below.

"All": all the numbers below which were memorized

"Missed": calls which you missed

"Incoming": calls which you received

"Outgoing": numbers which you called

You can call using the 5 most recently called numbers shown by "All" while driving.

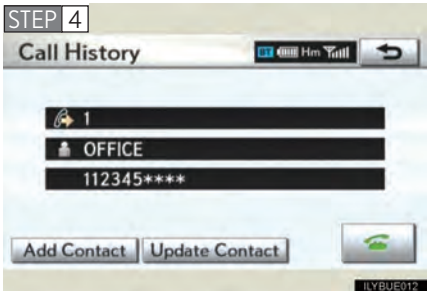
STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Call History" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3



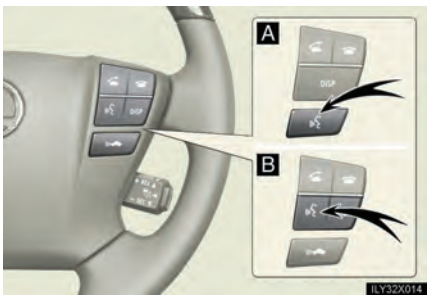
Select the desired tab and choose the desired data from the list.



Touch or press on the steering wheel.

Calling using voice recognition

Using voice recognition, you can call by name, call by number, and select a phone.



Talk switch

A Without dynamic radar cruise control

B With dynamic radar cruise control

The “Calling by Name” operating procedure is explained here. Other operating procedures are also similar.

● Calling by name

You can call by giving a voice tag registered in the phonebook. (→P. 506)

When you select "English" in "Language", you can call by giving a name registered in the phonebook.

STEP 1



Press  or .

If you want to check the entire command list, say "Command list" to display the "Command List" screen.

STEP 2 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say "Phone."

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say "Dial by Name."

STEP 4 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say the desired name.

STEP 5 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say the type of number such as "Mobile" or "Home".

STEP 6 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say "Dial". (You can also call by pushing  on the steering wheel or selecting "Dial".)

■ **Calling using POI**

You can make a call using a Point Of Interest.

■ **Call history list**

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the call history.
- Calls where the number is unavailable, such as public telephones, are not stored in the call history.

■ **When driving**

The functions "Dialing", "Dialing from the phonebook", and "Dialing from history" (except for call using the 5 most recently called numbers shown by "All" tab) are unavailable.

■ **International calls**

You may not be able to make international calls, depending on the mobile phone in use.

■ **Calling by using the call history**

STEP 1 Push  on the steering wheel to display the "Phone" screen.

STEP 2 Push  on the steering wheel to display the "Call History" screen.

STEP 3 Push  on the steering wheel to select the most recent number in the history.

STEP 4 Select or push  on the steering wheel.

■ To cancel voice recognition

- Press and hold  or .
- Press  on the steering wheel.
- Touch "Cancel". (excluding command verification)
- Say "Cancel".

■ When using voice recognition

Use correct commands and speak clearly, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize the command. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize the desired command.

Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.



Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ To refuse a call

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ **To adjust the incoming call volume**

Touch "-" or "+". You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

■ **International calls**

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly depending on the mobile phone in use.

Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



■ **To adjust the incoming call volume**

Touch "-" or "+". You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

■ **To prevent the other party from hearing your voice**

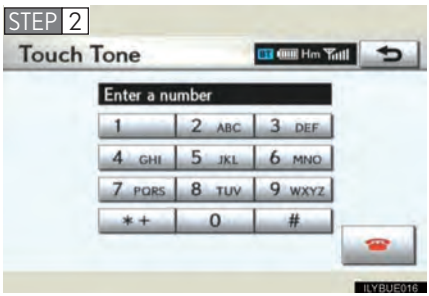
Touch "Mute".

Inputting tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phonebook.

STEP 1 Touch "0-9".

STEP 2



Input the number.

If repeated tone symbols* are stored in the phonebook, "Send" and "Exit" are displayed on the right side of the screen.

*: Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.
(e.g. 056133w0123p#1✻)

STEP 3 Confirm the number displayed on the screen, and touch "Send".

If you touch "Exit", this function will end.

To transfer a call

Touch "Call Transfer".

To hang up

Touch ☎ or press  on the steering wheel.

Interrupt call

When a connected call is interrupted by the third party, the incoming call message will be displayed.

- To talk with the other party: Touch or press on the steering wheel.
- To refuse the call: Touch or press on the steering wheel.

Everytime you touch or press on the steering wheel after a call is interrupted, you will be switched to the other party.

If your cellular phone is not accepted in HFP Ver. 1.5, this function cannot be used.

Transferring calls

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to a mobile phone while driving.
- If you transfer from a mobile phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the mobile phone used.
- For operation of the mobile phone in use, see the phone's manual.

While driving

Key input is unavailable.

Voice recognition during a call

"Mute" and "Send Tones" can be operated by voice recognition. (→P. 478)

Interrupt call operation

Interrupt call operation may differ from depending on your phone company and the cellular phone.

Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

You can set the hands-free system to your desired settings.



1 Setting the volume
2 Managing the phone
3 Phonebook settings
4 Bluetooth® settings
5 Detailed settings

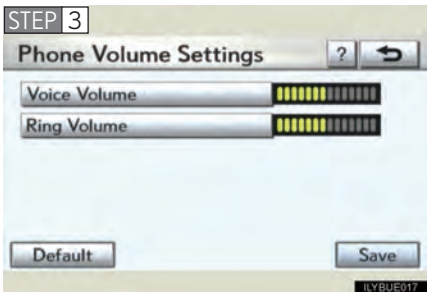
To display the screen shown above, press SETUP, and touch "Phone" on the "Setup" screen.

Setting the volume

STEP 1 Display the “Phone Settings” screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch “Volume” on the “Phone Settings” screen.

STEP 3

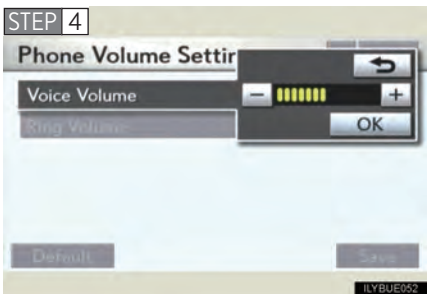


Choose the volume setting switch.

“Voice Volume”: changes the speaker volume

“Ring Volume”: changes the ring volume

STEP 4



Touch “-” or “+” to lower or raise the volume, and then “OK”.

STEP 5 When you complete all settings, touch “Save”.

■ Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the system automatically raises the volume one level.
If the vehicle speed drops to 43 mph (70 km/h), the volume will return to its original level.

■ To return to the default volume settings

Touch “Default”, and then “Yes”.

Managing the phone

■ Registering a Bluetooth® phone

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "(add new)" to register your cellular phone to the system.

STEP 4



Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

If multiple Bluetooth® phones are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® phone to be used. You may only use one phone at a time.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Select the phone to be used.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the phone.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

Editing a Bluetooth® phone

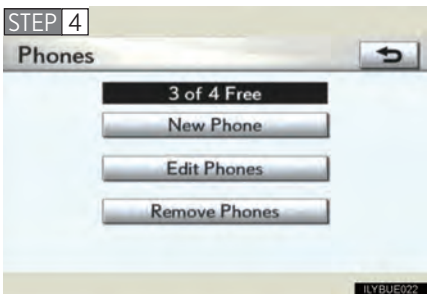
You can see the information of the Bluetooth® phone on the system or edit.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

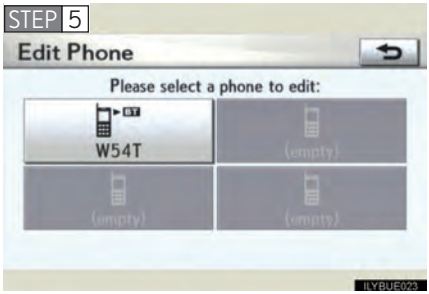
STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4



Touch "Edit Phones".

STEP 5



Select a phone to edit.

STEP 6



Touch “Edit”.

STEP 7



Input the device name, and touch “OK”.

STEP 8 Confirm the device name, and touch “OK”.

■ Removing a Bluetooth® phone

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Remove Phones" on the "Phones" screen.

STEP 5



Select the desired phone. If you want to remove all phones, touch "Select All".

STEP 6 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ Registering a Bluetooth® phone in a different way

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "New Phone" on the "Phones" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "(empty)" on the "Phone Position" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps for "Registering a Bluetooth® phone" from "STEP4". (→P. 487)

■ **When another Bluetooth® device is connected while registering or selecting a phone**

When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

■ **When Bluetooth® audio is connected while registering a phone**

When you register your phone, Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish registration. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

■ **Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish registration. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

■ **Setting the "Handsfree Power"**

Changes between "On" and "Off" every time you select "Handsfree Power" on the "Connect Phone" screen. When "Handsfree Power" is "On", the Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when you turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Editing the "Device Name"**

If you change a device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.

■ **About "Device Address"**

This address is specific to the system and cannot be changed. If you have registered two Bluetooth® phones with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to this address.

■ **When you delete a Bluetooth® phone**

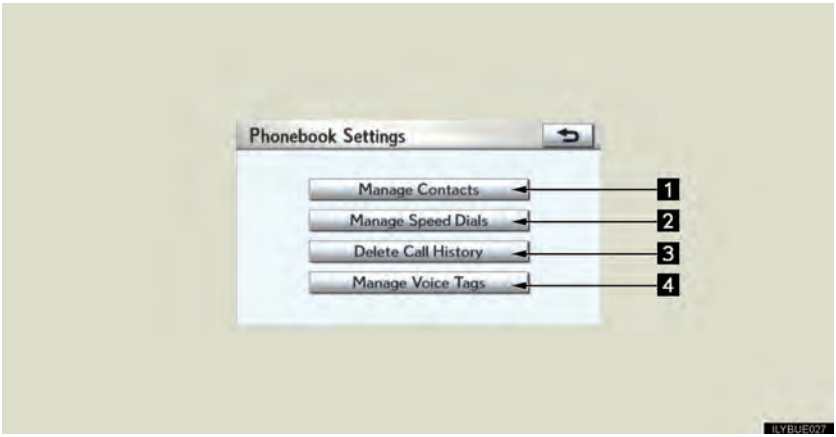
The phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

■ **Connecting the phone by voice recognition**

"Connect Phone" includes "Select Phone", "Add New Phone" and "Handsfree Power Off (On)" can be operated by voice recognition. (→P. 478)

Phonebook settings

The phonebook manages a maximum of 4 phonebooks in total. The data for 1000 contacts (up to 3 numbers per contact) can be registered in each phonebook.



1 Setting the phonebook
2 Speed dials setting
3 Deleting the call history
4 Setting the voice tag

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch "Phonebook" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

Setting the phonebook

● Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 492)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Transfer Contacts".

STEP 4



Select "Replace Contacts" or "Add Contacts".

In the case that the phonebook contains phonebook data, this screen will be displayed.



Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

If you wish to cancel the transfer before it finishes, touch "Cancel".

If the transferring is interrupted midway through the process, the phonebook data transferred until then can be memorized in the system.

STEP 6 In the case that you have selected "Add Contacts", a message will be displayed.
If you want to transfer another phonebook, touch "Yes".

● Registering the phonebook data

You can register the phonebook data. Up to 3 numbers per person can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 492)

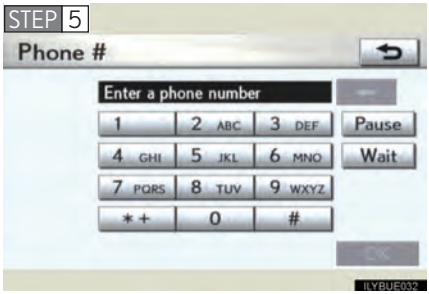
STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "New Contact" on the "Contacts" screen.



Input the name, and touch "OK".

STEP 5



Input the phone number, and touch "OK".

If you want to use the tone signal after the phone number, input the tone signal too.

STEP 6



Touch the desired phone type.

STEP 7 When two or less numbers in total are registered to this contact, this screen is displayed. When you want to add a number to this contact, select "Yes".

● Editing the phonebook data

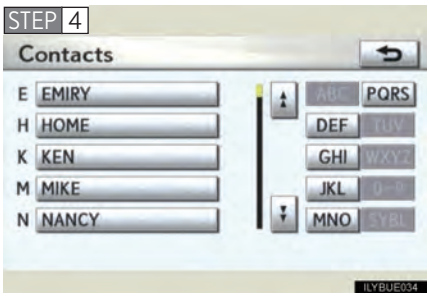
You can register the phone number separately.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 492)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Contacts” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

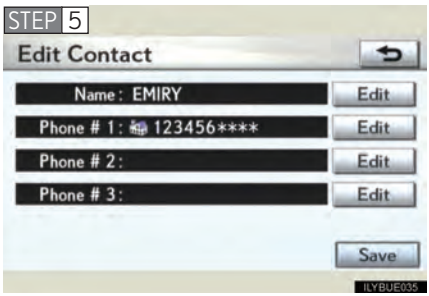
STEP 3 Touch “Edit Contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5



Choose “Edit” for the desired name or number.

STEP 6 Edit the name or number. After editing, touch “Save”.

● Deleting the phonebook data

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 492)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Contacts” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete Contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select All”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ **Phonebook data**

Phonebook data is managed for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

■ **Setting the phonebook in a different way (To display the “Contacts” screen)**

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch “Contacts” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4 Touch “Manage Contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

■ **When transferring a phone number**

Transfer the phone number while engine is running.

■ **When you have selected "Replace Contacts" to transfer the phone number**

- If your cellular phone does not support PBAP or OPP service, you cannot use this function.
- If your phone supports PBAP service, you can transfer the phonebook data without operating your phone.
- If your phone does not support PBAP service, you must transfer the phonebook data by operating your phone.

■ **When you have selected "Add Contacts" to transfer the phone number**

If your cellular phone does not support OPP service, you can not use this function. You can transfer the phonebook data only by operating your phone.

■ **When another Bluetooth® device is connected during transferring a phonebook**

When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed.
If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

■ **Transferring the phone number while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when data transfer finishes. (It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.)

■ **Editing the phonebook data in a different way (From "Contact Data" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Edit Contact" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP5". (→P. 496)

■ **Editing the phonebook data in a different way (From "Call History" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Call History" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Add Contact" or "Update Contact".

STEP 5 If you touch "Add Contact", follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP5". (→P. 496)
If you touch "Update Contact", follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP4". (→P. 496)

■ **Deleting the phonebook data in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Delete Contact" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ Speed dials setting

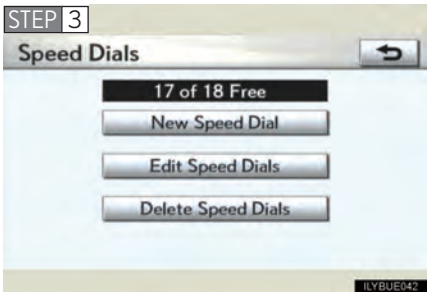
● Registering the speed dial

You can register the desired phone number from phonebook. Up to 18 numbers per phone can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 492)

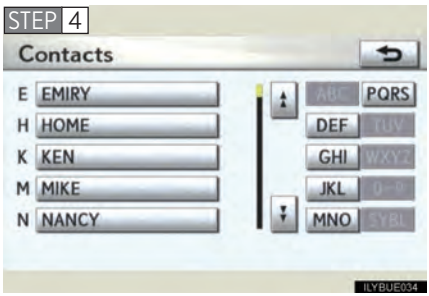
STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3



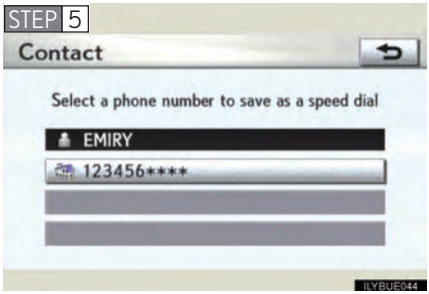
Touch “New Speed Dial”.

STEP 4



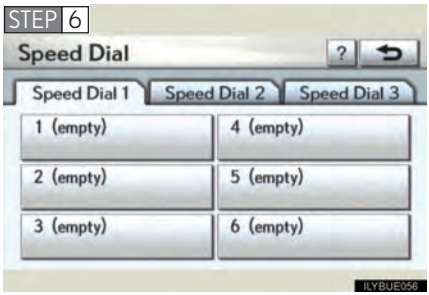
Choose the data to register.

STEP 5



Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 6



Touch the switch you want to register the number in.

STEP 7 If you select a switch you registered before, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to replace it, touch "Yes".

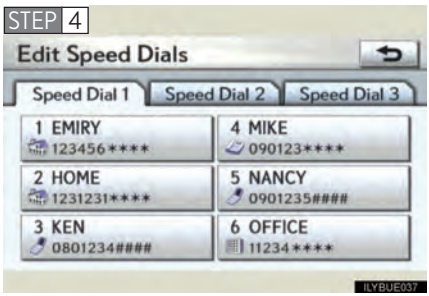
● Editing the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 492)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Speed Dials" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Edit Speed Dials" on the "Speed Dials" screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5



Touch "Edit".

STEP 6 Edit the name. After editing, touch "OK" and then "Save".

● Deleting the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 492)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete Speed Dials” on the “Speed Dials” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select All”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ **Setting the speed dials in a different way (To display the "Speed Dials" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Speed Dial" screen.

■ **Registering the speed dial in a different way (From "Speed Dial" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "(add new)" on the "Speed Dial" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Yes" to set new speed dial.

STEP 5 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 7 Follow the steps "Registering the speed dial" from "STEP6". (→P. 500)

■ **Registering the speed dial in a different way (From "Contact Data" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Set Speed Dial" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

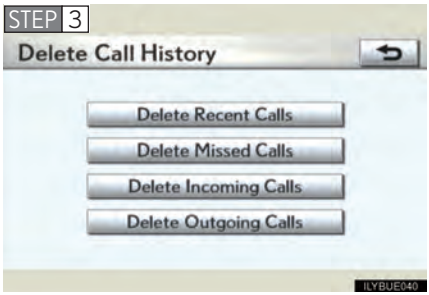
STEP 7 Follow the steps "Registering the speed dial" from "STEP6". (→P. 500)

■ Deleting call history

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 492)

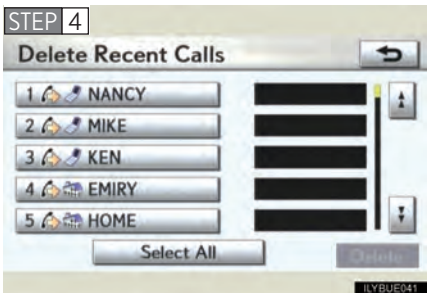
STEP 2 Touch "Delete Call History" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Choose the desired history to delete.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ **Deleting call history in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch “Call History” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete” on the “Call History” screen.

STEP 4 Follow the steps “Deleting call history” from “STEP4”. (→P. 505)

■ Setting the voice tag

● Registering the voice tag

You can register a voice tag. Up to 20 numbers can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 492)

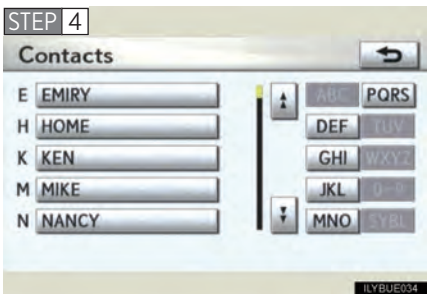
STEP 2 Touch “Manage Voice Tags” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3



Touch “New Voice Tag”.

STEP 4



Choose the data to register.

STEP 5



Touch "● REC", and record a voice tag.

To play the voice tag, touch "▶ Play".

STEP 6 When you complete the voice tag registration, touch "OK".

● Editing the voice tag

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 492)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Edit Voice Tags" on the "Voice Tags" screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5 Edit the voice tag. After editing, touch "OK".

● Deleting the voice tag

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 492)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Delete Voice Tags" on the "Voice Tags" screen.



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ **Setting the voice tag in a different way (To display the "Voice Tags" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Contacts" screen.

■ **When using the voice tag**

Do not change the language setting from the language setting used when registering. If they are different, the voice recognition cannot recognize the voice tag that you have registered.

■ **When recording a voice tag**

Do so in a quiet environment.

■ **Registering the voice tag in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 471)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Set Voice Tag" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps "Registering the voice tag" from "STEP5". (→P. 506)

Bluetooth® settings

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.



1 Changing the handsfree power

2 Changing the name in the Bluetooth® network

3 Changing the passcode that you used to register your cellular phone in the system

4 The address specific to the system

You cannot change it. If the same device name is displayed on the screen of your phone, refer to it.

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch "Bluetooth*" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

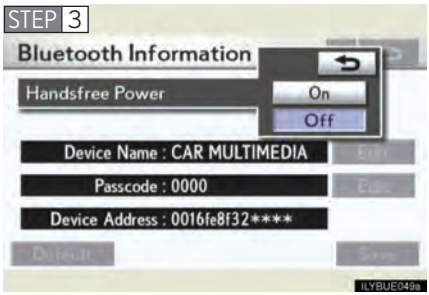
■ Changing the handsfree power

The Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when you turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. You can change this to "On" or "Off".

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 509)

STEP 2 Touch "Handsfree Power" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "On" or "Off", and then "Save".

■ Editing the device name

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 509)

STEP 2 Touch "Edit" of "Device Name" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3 Input the device name, and touch "OK".

STEP 4 Touch "Save" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

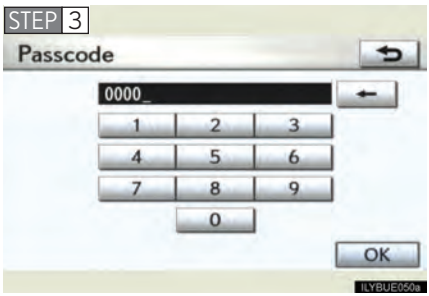
*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

Editing the passcode

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 509)

STEP 2 Touch "Edit" of "Passcode" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3



Input a passcode, and touch "OK".

STEP 4 Touch "Save" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

While driving

You cannot change "Handsfree Power" from "On" to "Off" while driving.

About "Device Name"

The device names are common Bluetooth® audio and Bluetooth® phone.

If you change the device name of the phone, the device name of the audio will change at same time. However, passcodes can be set separately.

To return to the default detailed phone settings

Touch "Default", and then "Yes".

If "Handsfree Power" is changed from "Off" to "On", Bluetooth® connection will begin.

Detailed settings



1 Changing the incoming call display mode

2 Changing the display phone status

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the “Phone Settings” screen. (→P. 485)

STEP 2 Touch “Details” on the “Phone Settings” screen.

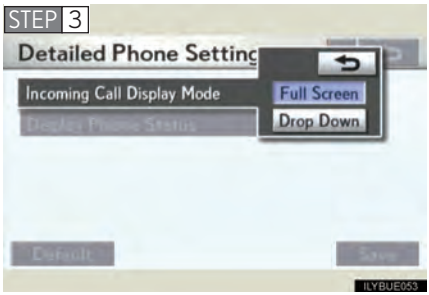
Changing the incoming call display mode

You can select the method of the incoming call display.

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 512)

STEP 2 Touch "Incoming Call Display Mode" on the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Full Screen" or "Drop Down", and touch "Save".

"Full Screen":
The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

"Drop Down":
A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

Changing the display phone status

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting.

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 512)

STEP 2 Touch "Display Phone Status" on the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen.

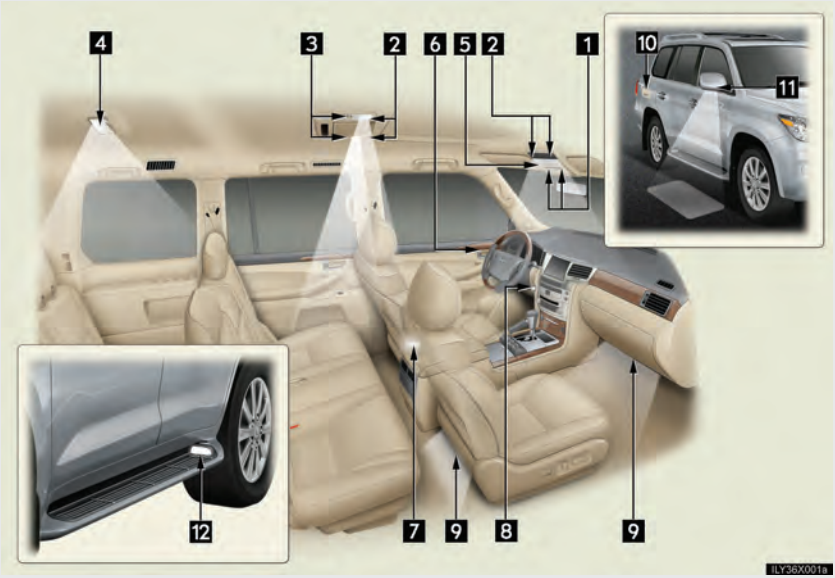
STEP 3 Touch "On" or "Off", and then "Save".

To return to the default detailed phone settings

Touch "Default", and then "Yes".

Interior lights list

Your Lexus is equipped with an illuminated entry system to assist in entering the vehicle. Owing to the function of the system, the lights shown in the following illustration automatically turn on/off according to the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are opened/closed, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.



1 Front personal lights (→P. 516)
2 Front interior lights (→P. 515)
3 Rear personal lights (→ P. 516)
4 Rear interior light (→P. 515)
5 Shift lever light (when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode)
6 Inside door handle light
7 Door courtesy light

8 “ENGINE START STOP” switch light
9 Foot light
10 Luggage compartment light (→P. 517)
11 Outer foot lights
12 Running board lights

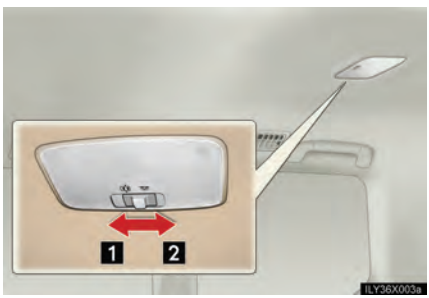
Interior lights

▶ Front



1 “OFF”
2 Door position on/off
3 “ON”

▶ Rear



1 Door position
2 On

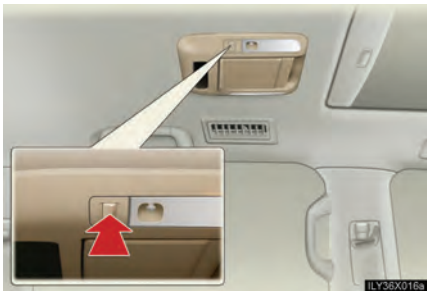
Personal lights

▶ Front



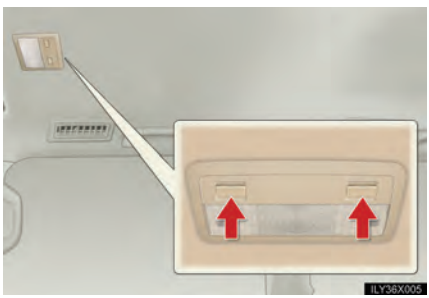
On/off

▶ Rear (with rear seat entertainment system)



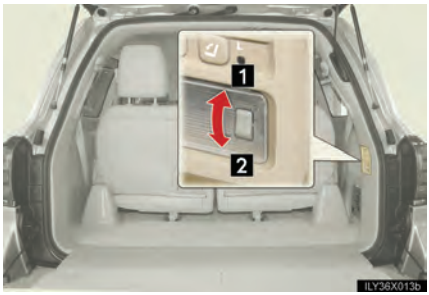
On/off

▶ Rear (without rear seat entertainment system)



On/off

Luggage compartment light



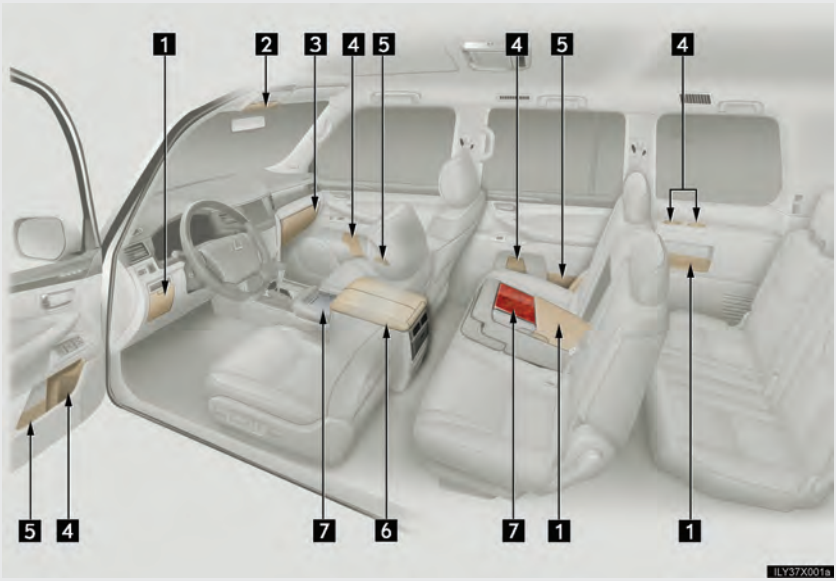
1 Off
2 Door position

To prevent the battery from being discharged

If the interior lights and "ENGINE START STOP" switch light remain on when the door is not fully closed and the interior light switch is in the door position, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

Customization

Settings (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 722)



1 Auxiliary boxes
2 Overhead console
3 Glove box
4 Bottle holders
5 Door pockets
6 Console box/cool box
7 Cup holders

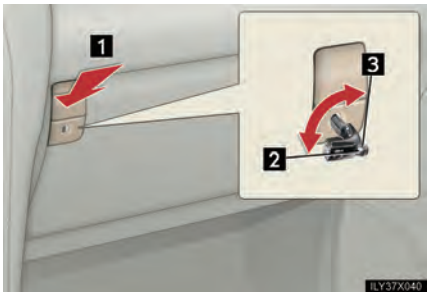
CAUTION

Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Glove box



1 Open (push button)
2 Unlock with the mechanical key
3 Lock with the mechanical key

Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

CAUTION

While driving

Keep the glove box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Console box (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with either a console box or cool box.

For vehicles with the cool box, refer to page 526.



Lift the lever to open.



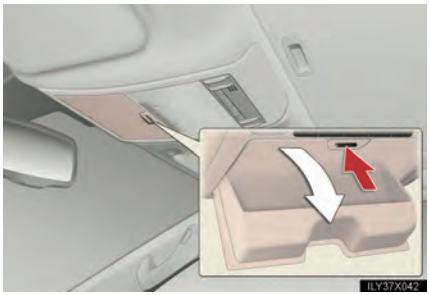
Remove the tray.

CAUTION

While driving

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Overhead console



Press the button.

The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing small items.

CAUTION

While driving

Do not leave the overhead console open.
Items may fall out and cause injury.

Cup holders

▶ Front



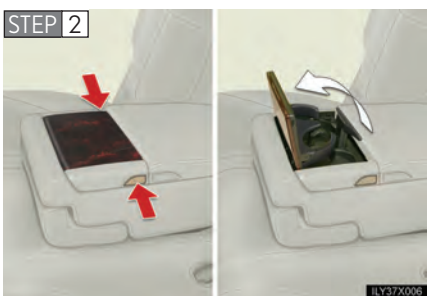
Press down and release the lid.

You can adjust or remove the separator inside.

▶ Rear



Pull down the armrest.



Press the button.

CAUTION

Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

When not in use

Keep the cup holders closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Bottle holders

▶ For front seats



▶ For second seats



▶ For third seats



NOTICE

Items that should not be stowed in the bottle holders

Put the cap on before stowing a bottle. Do not place open bottles in the bottle holders, or glasses and paper cups containing liquid. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

Auxiliary boxes

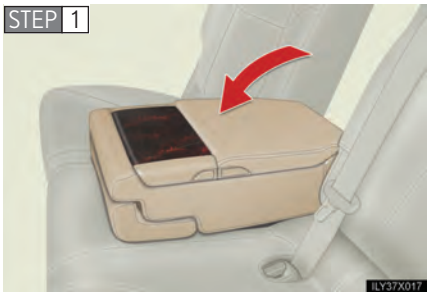
▶ For front seats



Press and release the lid.

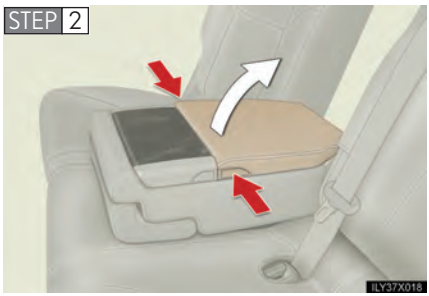
▶ For second seats

STEP 1



Pull down the armrest.

STEP 2



Press the button to release the lock.

▶ For third seats



CAUTION

While driving

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.
Items stored in it may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

Cool box*

While the engine is running, the cool box, which is cooled by the air conditioning, can be used.



Lift the lever to open.



On/off

When on, the indicator light comes on.

If the front air conditioning system is not in use, the front air conditioning system is automatically turned on when the cool box is turned on.

■ **While the cool box is on**

The front air conditioning system cannot be turned off.

■ **When the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below**

The cool box may not operate.

*: If equipped

CAUTION

While driving

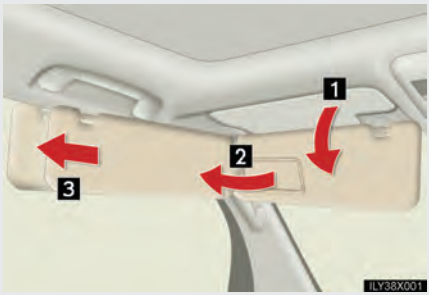
Keep the cool box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the cool box on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

▶ Main sun visor



1 Forward position:
Flip down.

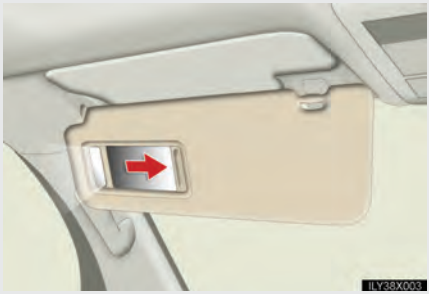
2 Side position:
Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.

3 Side extender:
Place in side position, then slide backwards.

▶ Sub-sun visor



Flip down with the main sun visor in position 2 or 3.



Slide the cover.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

▶ Front



Push the front part of the lid to open. Push the lid again to close.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards

▶ Rear



Pull the ashtray lid to open.

Pull the ashtray upwards to remove.

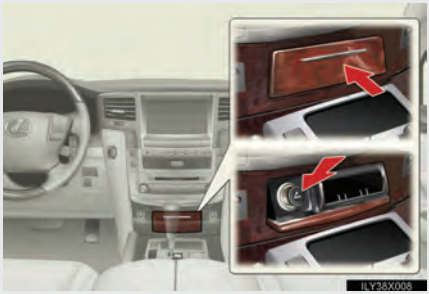
⚠ CAUTION

■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ To prevent fire

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.



Push the front part of the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when it is ready for use.

■ **The cigarette lighter can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To avoid burns or fires**

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

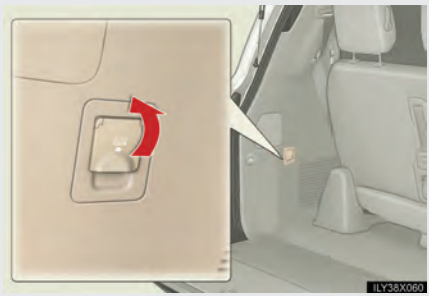
The power outlet can be used for the following components:

12 V: Accessories that run on less than 10 A
115 V AC: Accessories that use less than 100 W

▶ Front (12 V)



▶ Rear (115 V AC)



■ **The power outlet can be used when**

▶ **12 V**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ **115 V AC**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

▶ **12 V**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

▶ **115 V AC**

Do not use a 115 V AC appliance that requires more than 100 W.
If a 115 V AC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

■ **Appliances that may not operate properly (115 V AC)**

The following 115 V AC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W:

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

Heated steering wheel*

The heated steering wheel can be used to heat the leather portion of the steering wheel.



On/Off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

■ **The heated steering wheel can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Timer**

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

■ **If the indicator light flashes**

Press the switch to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the switch again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*: If equipped

⚠ CAUTION

Burns

- Only appropriately qualified and capable non-impaired persons should operate the vehicle. However, care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes into contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not use the heated steering wheel more than necessary. Doing so may cause minor burns or overheating.

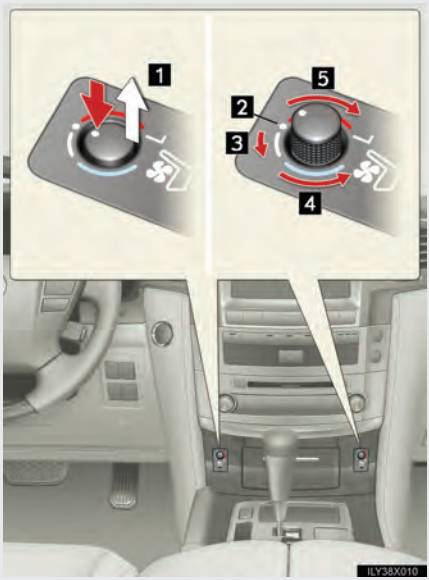
⚠ NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Turn the switch off when the engine is not running.

The temperature of the front seats can be adjusted individually.

Climate control seats (if equipped)



1 Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

2 Off

Press the knob to lock it when not in use.

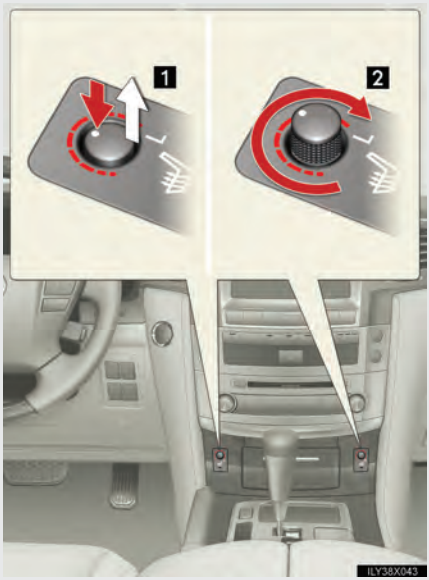
3 Ventilation

4 Cool air

5 Warm air

Seat heaters

▶ For front seats



1 Press the knob to turn the system on.

2 Turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat temperature becomes.
Press the knob again to turn the system off.

▶ For second seats (if equipped)



1 For left second seat

2 For right second sea

3 High heating temperature

4 Low heating temperature

To turn on the seat heater, press "HI" or "LO".
The indicator light on "HI" or "LO" switch indicates that the seat heater is on.

5 Off

To turn off, press "OFF".

■ **The climate control seats/seat heaters can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Replacing the air filters (Climate control seats only)**

Filters are installed in the climate control seats. For replacement of the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Burns/excessive cooling (Climate control seats only)**

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the climate control seats/seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the climate control seats/seat heater. Using the climate control seats/seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.
- Do not use the climate control seat more than necessary. Doing so may cool the occupants excessively or may cause minor burns or overheating (Climate control seats only).

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent climate control seats/seat heater damage**

Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

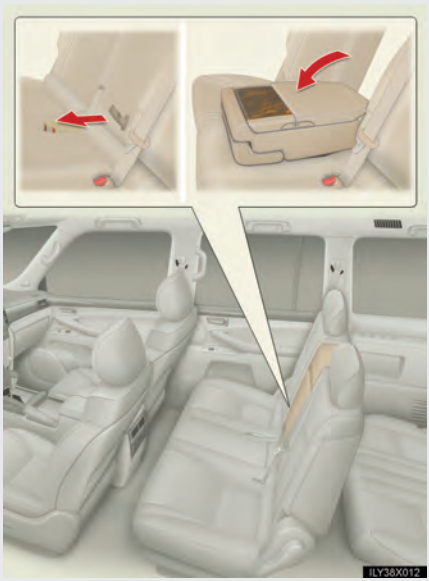
Turn the switches off when the engine is not running.

▶ Front



Lift the lever up and slide the armrest

▶ Rear



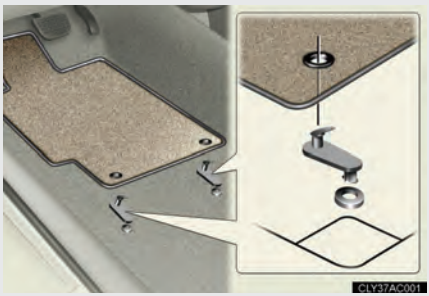
Pull the armrest down for use.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.



Fix the floor mat in place using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) and the fixing procedure of the floor mat for your vehicle may differ from those shown in the illustration. For details, refer to the floor mat retention clip installation instructions supplied with the clips.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

CAUTION

Before driving



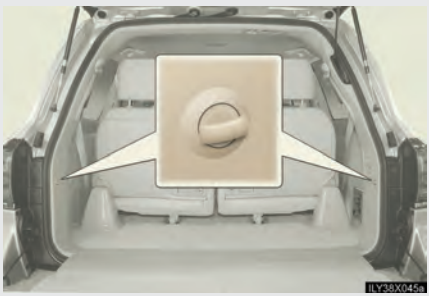
- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in "P", fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

Cargo hooks



Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

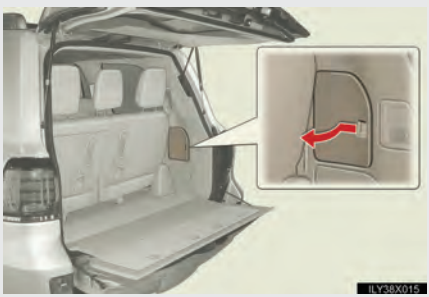
Cargo net hooks



To hang the cargo net, use the cargo net hooks and rear cargo hooks.

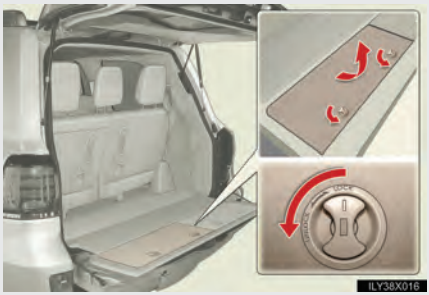
The cargo net itself is not included as an original equipment.

Storage compartment (if equipped)



Open the storage compartment as shown.

Warning reflector holder



Hold the warning reflector with a band.

The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

First-aid kit holder



Hold the first-aid kit with a band.

The first-aid kit itself is not included as an original equipment.

CAUTION

When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the cargo net hooks

Avoid hanging things other than a cargo net on it.

Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink®.

Programming HomeLink® (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



1 Indicator
2 Buttons

Programming HomeLink®



Point the remote control transmitter for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink® buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

STEP 2



Press and hold one of the HomeLink® buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash, you can release both buttons.

If the HomeLink® indicator light comes on but does not flash, flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and remains lit, the HomeLink® button is already programmed. Use the other buttons or follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions. (→P. 547)

STEP 3



Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button.

If a HomeLink® button has been programmed for a garage door, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button. The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink® indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is of the rolling code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming a rolling code system**

If your device is rolling code equipped, follow the steps under the heading "Programming HomeLink®" before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the learn button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener motor.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener motor for the location of the learn button.

STEP 2 Press the learn button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

STEP 3 Press and hold the vehicle's programmed HomeLink® button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® signal and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market**

STEP 1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device's remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.

STEP 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink® compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

STEP 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming other devices**

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ **Reprogramming a button**

The individual HomeLink® buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions.

Operating HomeLink®

Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should come on.

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Reprogramming a HomeLink® button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink® indicator light will start flashing slowly. Next, while still pressing and holding the HomeLink® button, press and hold the button on the transmitter until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)



Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

Before programming

- Install a new battery in the remote control transmitter.
- The battery side of the remote control transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® button.

Certification for the garage door opener

FCC ID: CB2070NHL4

IC: 279B-070NHL4

This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: The transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device. The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

When support is necessary

Visit on the web at www.homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When programming a garage door or other remote control devices

The garage door on other devices may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink® compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an interfering object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

Safety Connect is a subscription-based telematics service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to provide safety and security features to subscribers. Safety Connect is supported by Lexus' designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Safety Connect service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

By using the Safety Connect service, you are agreeing to be bound by the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and its Terms and Conditions, as in effect and amended from time to time, a current copy of which is available at Lexus.com. All use of the Safety Connect service is subject to such then-applicable Terms and Conditions.

System components



1 Microphone
2 LED light indicators
3 "SOS" button

*: If equipped

■ **Services**

Subscribers have the following Safety Connect services available:

- Automatic Collision Notification*
  Helps drivers receive necessary response from emergency service providers. (→P. 553)

  *: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2
- Stolen Vehicle Location
  Helps drivers in the event of vehicle theft. (→P. 554)
- Emergency Assistance Button (SOS)
  Connects drivers to response-center support. (→P. 554)
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance
  Provides drivers various on-road assistance. (→P. 554)

■ **Subscription**

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services.

A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) or push the "SOS" button in your vehicle for further subscription details.

■ **Safety Connect Services Information**

- Phone calls using the vehicles Bluetooth® technology will not be possible during Safety Connect.
- Safety Connect is available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Safety Connect response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive emergency service support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.
- Automatic Collision Notification, Emergency Assistance and Stolen Vehicle Location will function in the United States, including Hawaii and Alaska, and in Canada, and Enhanced Roadside Assistance will function in the United States (except Hawaii) and in Canada. No Safety Connect services will function outside of the United States in countries other than Canada.
- Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

■ **Languages**

The Safety Connect response center will offer support in multiple languages. The Safety Connect system will offer voice prompts in English and Spanish. Please indicate your language of choice when enrolling.

■ **When contacting the response center**

You may be unable to contact the response center if the network is busy.

Safety Connect LED light Indicators

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the red indicator light comes on for 2 seconds then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light comes on, indicating that the service is active.
The following indicator light patterns indicate specific system usage conditions:

- Green indicator light on = Active service
- Green indicator light flashing = Safety Connect call in process
- Red indicator light (except at vehicle start-up) = System malfunction (contact your Lexus dealer)
- No indicator light (off) = Safety Connect service not active

Safety Connect services

Automatic Collision Notification

In case of either airbag deployment or severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to automatically call the response center. The responding agent receives the vehicle's location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.

Stolen Vehicle Location

If your vehicle is stolen, Safety Connect can work with local authorities to assist them in locating and recovering the vehicle. After filing a police report, call the Safety Connect response center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) and follow the prompts for Safety Connect to initiate this service.

In addition to assisting law enforcement with recovery of a stolen vehicle, Safety-Connect-equipped vehicle location data may, under certain circumstances, be shared with third parties to locate your vehicle. Further information is available at Lexus.com.

Emergency Assistance Button ("SOS")

In the event of an emergency on the road, push the "SOS" button to reach the Safety Connect response center. The answering agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the response-center agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

Enhanced Roadside Assistance

Enhanced Roadside Assistance adds GPS data to the already included warranty-based Lexus roadside service.
Subscribers can press the "SOS" button to reach a Safety Connect response-center agent, who can help with a wide range of needs, such as: towing, flat tire, fuel delivery, etc. For a description of the Roadside Assistance services and their limitations, please see the Safety Connect Terms and Conditions, which are available at Lexus.com.

Safety information for Safety Connect

Important! Read this information before using Safety Connect.

Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver. It receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by the following U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, and government health agencies and industries reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

■ **License**

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

■ **Certification for Lexus Enform with Safety Connect**

FCC ID: O9EGTM1

FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Maintenance and care 4

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 558

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 561

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements..... 564

General maintenance..... 567

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 570

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions..... 571

Hood..... 575

Engine compartment 576

Tires..... 593

Tire inflation pressure..... 602

Wheels..... 606

Air conditioning filter 608

Electronic key battery..... 611

Checking and replacing fuses 613

Light bulbs..... 630

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
  Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ **Automatic car washes**

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ **High pressure car washes**

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ **Aluminum wheels**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers and side moldings**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When cleaning the windshield**



Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ **Caution about the exhaust pipe**

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

NOTICE

■ To prevent deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

● Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:

- After driving near the sea coast
- After driving on salted roads
- If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
- If you see dead insects or insect droppings on the paint
- After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
- If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
- If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface

● If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

● To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

● Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

● Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ When using an automatic car wash

Turn off the wiper switch.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded ventilated area.

Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

CAUTION

Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 125)

  Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
  - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

General maintenance

Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

Scheduled maintenance

Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, read the "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself.
Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus repair manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, refer to the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

■ **Repair and replacement**

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ **Reset the maintenance data**

After the required maintenance is performed according to the maintenance schedule, please reset the maintenance data.
To reset the data, follow the procedures described below:

STEP 1 Switch the display to the trip meter A when the engine is running. (→P. 184)

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 3 While pressing the trip meter reset button, set the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode (but do not start the engine because otherwise the reset mode will be canceled). Continue to press and hold the button until the multi-information display indicates that the reset is complete.

■ **Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer**

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Warning in handling of battery, oils, fuels, and fluids

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 589)

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the "Warranty and Services Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement". It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	• Maintenance-free (→P. 589)
Brake fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 585)
Engine coolant	• At the correct level? (→P. 583)
Engine oil	• At the correct level? (→P. 578)
Exhaust system	• No fumes or strange sounds?
Power steering fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 587)
Radiator/condenser/hoses	• Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 584)
Washer fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 592)

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	• Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?
Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism	• Can the vehicle be held securely on an incline with the shift lever in "P"?
Brake pedal	• Moves smoothly? • Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?
Brakes	• Pulls to one side when applied? • Loss of brake effectiveness? • Spongy feeling brake pedal? • Pedal almost touches floor?
Head restraints	• Move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	• Function properly?
Lights	• Do all the lights come on? • Headlights aimed correctly?
Parking brake	• Moves smoothly? • Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?

Items	Check points
Seat belts	• Does the seat belt system operate smoothly? • Are the belts undamaged?
Seats	• Do the seat controls operate properly?
Steering wheel	• Moves smoothly? • Has correct free play? • No strange noises?

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Doors	• Operate smoothly?
Engine hood	• The lock system works properly?
Fluid leaks	• Is there any leakage after parking?
Tire	• Inflation pressure is correct? • Tire surfaces not worn or damaged? • Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule? • Wheel nuts are not loose?

CAUTION

If the engine is running

Turn off the engine and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

  Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

  The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedures given in these sections.

Items		Parts and tools
Battery condition	(→P. 589)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level	(→P. 585)	• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine coolant level	(→P. 583)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. For the U.S.A.: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. For Canada: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)

Items	Parts and tools
Engine oil level (→P. 578)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding oil)
Fuses (→P. 613)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Power steering fluid (→P. 587)	• Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON®II or III • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding power steering fluid)
Radiator and condenser (→P. 584)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 602)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 592)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel

⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

■ When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is OFF.
With the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 584)

■ When working on or under the vehicle

- Do not get under the vehicle with just the jack supporting it.
  Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.
- Use eye protection to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

STEP 1



Pull the hood release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

STEP 2



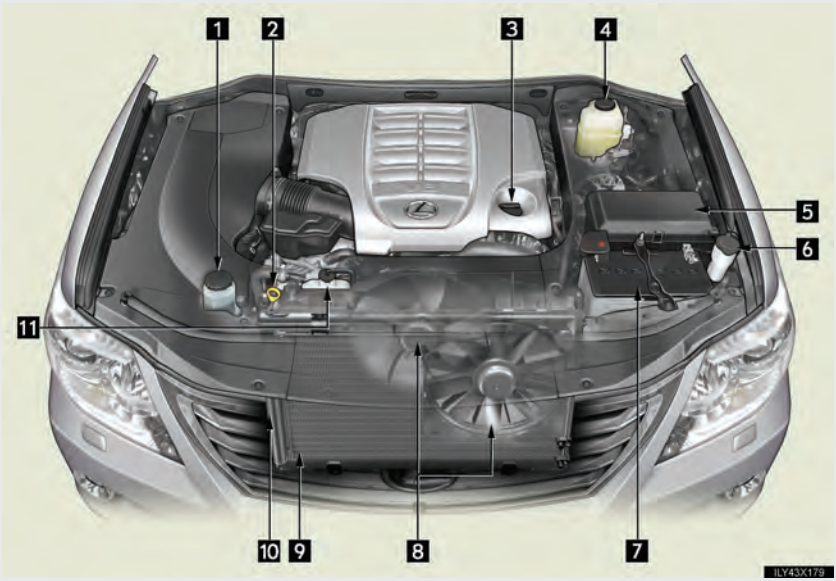
Lift the hood catch and lift the hood.

CAUTION

Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Engine compartment



1 Power steering fluid reservoir (→P. 587)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 578)
3 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 579)
4 Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 585)
5 Fuse box (→P. 613)
6 Washer fluid tank (→P. 592)
7 Battery (→P. 589)
8 Cooling fans
9 Condenser (→P. 584)
10 Radiator (→P. 584)
11 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 583)

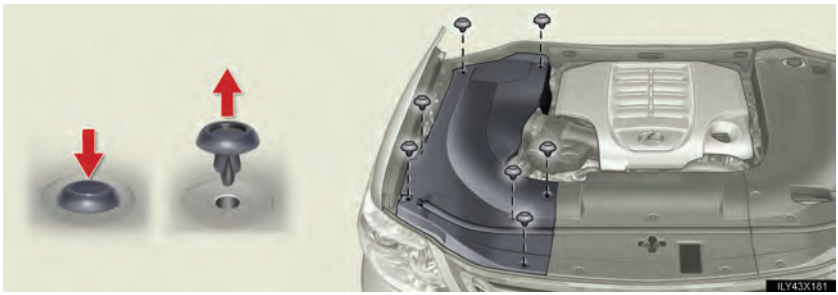
Engine compartment cover

Removing the cover

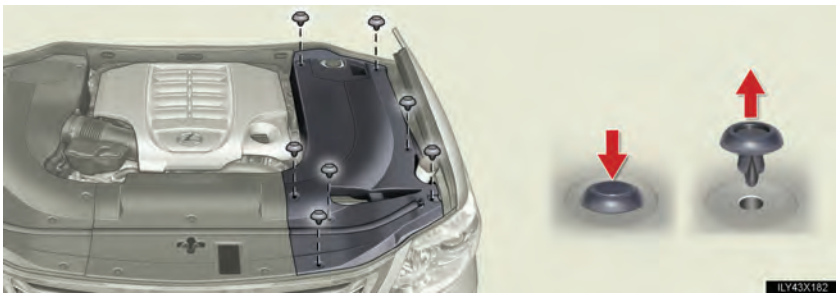
▶ Front



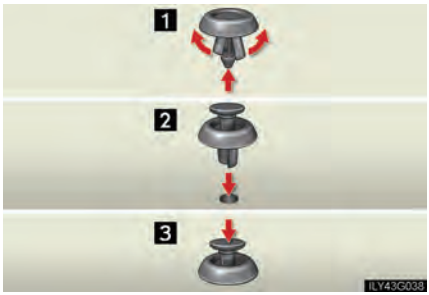
▶ Right-hand side



▶ Left-hand side



Installing the clips



1 Push up center portion
2 Insert
3 Press

NOTICE

After installing an engine compartment cover

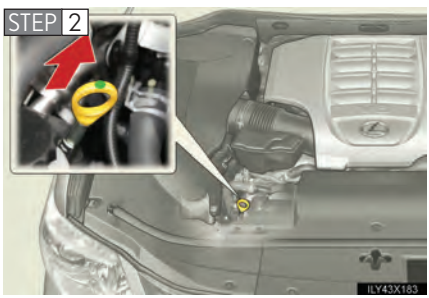
Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



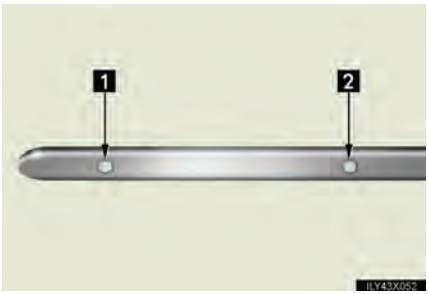
Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



1 Low
2 Full

Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine. (→P. 701)

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 701
Oil quantity (Low→Full)	1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp.qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise.

■ **Engine oil consumption**

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds, frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles (0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles, 1.0 L per 1000 km)
- If you consume more than 1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp.qt.) every 600 miles (1000 km), contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

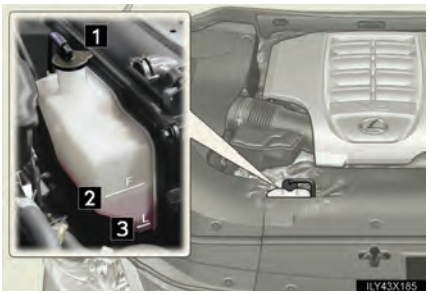
Check the oil level on regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, as the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “F” and “L” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



1 Reservoir cap
2 “F”
3 “L”

If the level is on or below the “L” line, add coolant up to the “F” line.

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, reservoir cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent damage to parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser, and clear any foreign objects.
If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

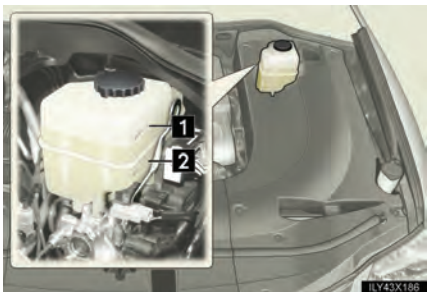
⚠ CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser, as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Brake fluid

Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

1 MAX
2 MIN

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Adding fluid

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

Refilling brake fluid

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 Depress the brake pedal more than 40 times.

STEP 3 Remove the reservoir cap by hand. Add brake fluid up to the "MAX" line.

If you do not follow the procedure above, the reservoir may overflow.

Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

⚠ CAUTION

When filling the reservoir

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

⚠ NOTICE

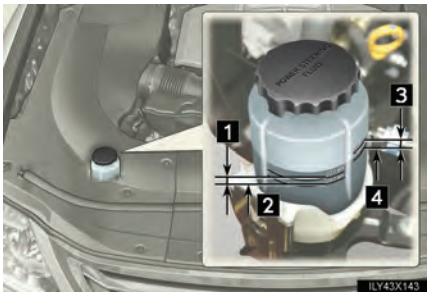
If the fluid level is low

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Power steering fluid

Fluid level

The fluid level should be within the appropriate range.



1 Full (when cold)
2 Add fluid (when cold)
3 Full (when hot)
4 Add fluid (when hot)

Hot: Vehicle has been driven around 50 mph (80 km/h) for 20 minutes, or slightly longer in frigid temperatures. (Fluid temperature, 140°F - 175°F [60°C - 80°C]).

Cold: Engine has not been run for about five hours. (Room temperature, 50°F - 85°F [10°C - 30°C]).

Checking the fluid level

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III
Items	Rag or paper, Clean funnel (only for adding fluid)

STEP 1 Clean all dirt off the reservoir.
STEP 2 Remove the cap by turning it counterclockwise.
STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.
STEP 4 Reinstall and remove the reservoir cap again.
STEP 5 Check the fluid level.

CAUTION

When checking the reservoir

Take care, as the reservoir may be hot.

NOTICE

When adding fluid

Avoid overfilling, or the power steering may be damaged.

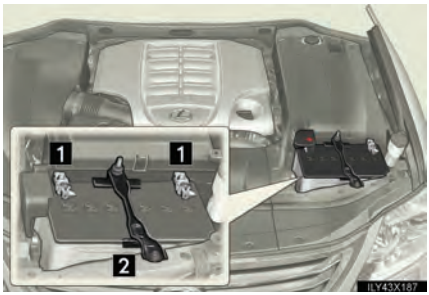
After replacing the reservoir cap

Check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

Battery

Battery exterior

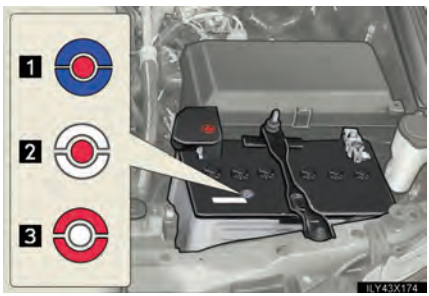
Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



1 Terminals
2 Hold-down clamp

Checking battery condition (vehicles with the battery indicator)

Check the battery condition using the indicator color.



1 Blue: Good condition
2 White: Charging is necessary. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.
3 Red: Not working properly, have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

STEP 1 Depress the brake pedal with the shift lever in "P" or "N".

STEP 2 Open and close any of the doors.

STEP 3 Restart the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Chemicals in the battery**

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ How to recharge the battery

Only perform a slow charge (5A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

CAUTION

When refilling the washer fluid

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

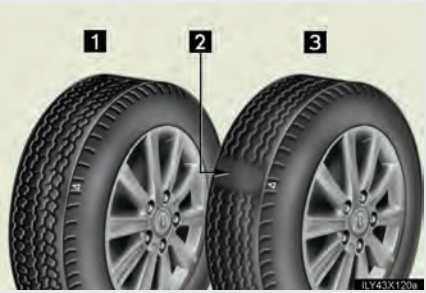
Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with tread wear.

Checking tires

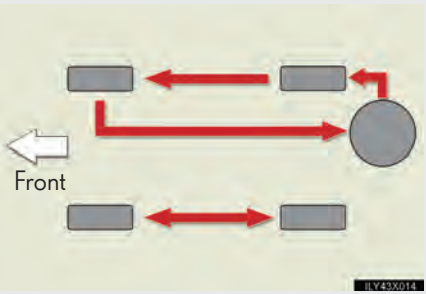


1 New tread
2 Treadwear indicator
3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "△" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and inflation pressure if not rotated.

Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after rotating the tires that the tire pressure has been changed for towing. (→P. 594)

The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 656)

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 595)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When the set tire pressure has been changed before towing with the P285/50R20 tires. (→P. 706)
- When rotating the tires in above situation.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

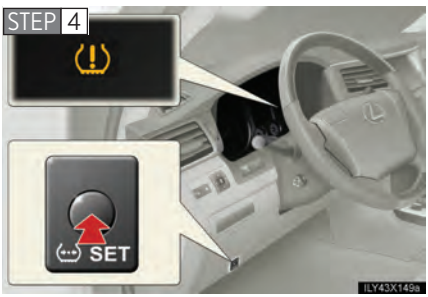
While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

STEP 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 706)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 4



Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times and a message appears on the multi-information display.

STEP 5 Wait for a few minutes with the IGNITION ON mode, and then turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When to replace your vehicle's tires**

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ **Replacing tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ **Tire life**

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ **If the tread wears down 0.16 in. (4 mm) or more on snow tires**

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost.

Maximum load of tire

Check that the number given by dividing the maximum load by 1.10 of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.



For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire. (→P. 711)

Tire types

1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 292)

■ **Initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Initialize the tire pressure warning system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ **If you push the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally**

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

■ **When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times and the setting message does not appear on the multi-information display.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for about 20 minutes.

■ **Routine tire inflation pressure checks**

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **Tire pressure warning system certification**

FCC ID: PAXPMV107J
FCC ID: HYQ13BCX

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

L'utilisation de ce dispositif est autorisée seulement aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) il ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur du dispositif doit être prêt à accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique reçu, même si ce brouillage est susceptible de compromettre le fonctionnement du dispositif.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Tire pressure warning system operation

The tire pressure warning system may not provide warning immediately if a tire bursts or if sudden air leakage occurs.

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters and tire valve caps

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- When replacing tires, make sure also to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 594)

Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

If tire inflation pressures become low while driving

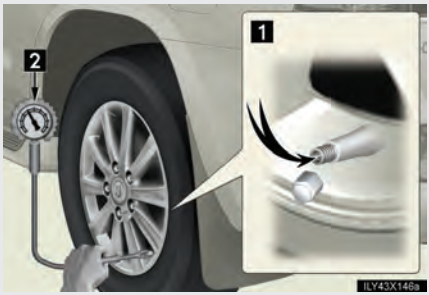
Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 706)



Inspection and adjustment procedure



1 Tire valve
2 Tire pressure gauge

STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.

STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

STEP 3 Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust tire pressure.
If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

STEP 6 Reinstall the tire valve cap.

Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every 2 weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

⚠ NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.
Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 594)

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Air conditioning filter

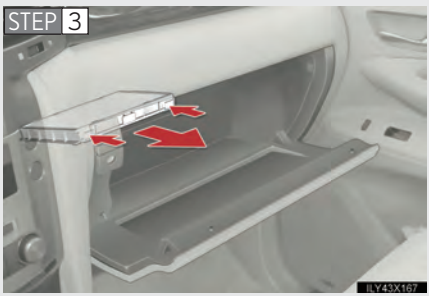
The air conditioning filter must be cleaned or changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removal method

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch IGNITION ON mode and switch to recirculated air mode, then turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

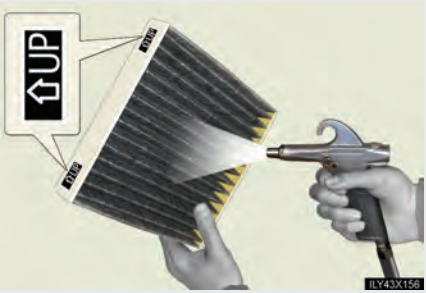


Open the glove box and remove the filter cover.



Remove the filter case.

Cleaning method



If the filter is dirty, clean by blowing compressed air through the filter from the downward side.

Hold the air gun 2 in. (5 cm) from the filter and blow for approximately 2 minutes at 72 psi (500 kPa, 5.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar).
If it is not available, have the filter cleaned by your Lexus dealer.

Replacement method



Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.

Checking interval

Inspect, clean and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, more frequent cleaning or early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".)

If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the system

- When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.
- When cleaning the filter, do not clean the filter with water.

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver (To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with rag.)
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

Replacing the battery

STEP 1



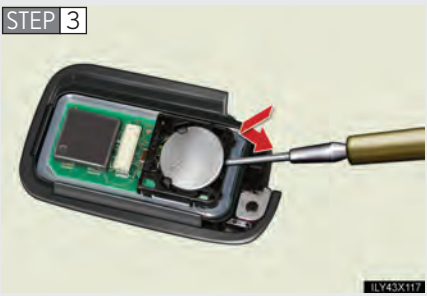
Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

■ **If the electronic key battery is discharged**

The following symptoms may occur.

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ **Use a CR1632 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by your Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ **When the card key battery needs to be replaced**

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealer. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

Keep away from children. These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the electronic key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

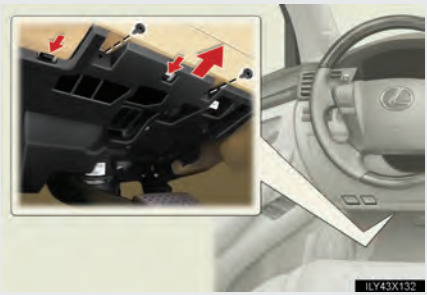
STEP 2 The fuses are located in the following places. To check the fuses, follow the instructions below.

▶ Engine compartment



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ Driver's side instrument panel



Remove the bolts and the cover.



Remove the lid.

▶ Passenger's side instrument panel

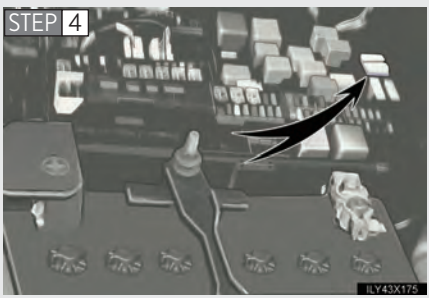


Remove the cover.



Remove the lid.

STEP 3 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" (→P. 618) for details about which fuse to check.

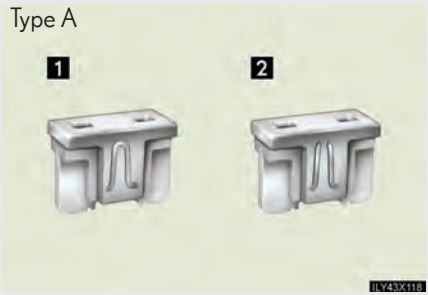


Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

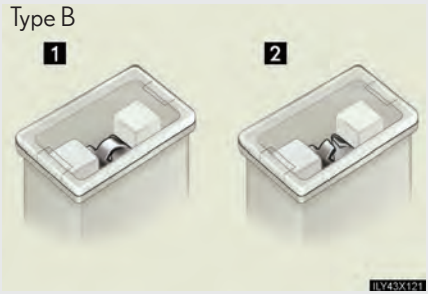
STEP 5 Check if the fuse has blown.

▶ Type A and B

Type A



Type B



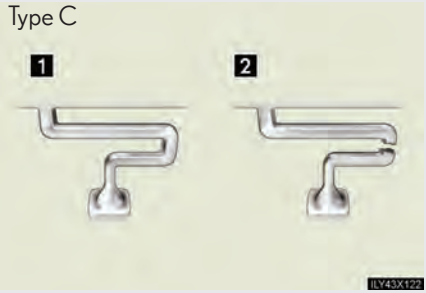
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

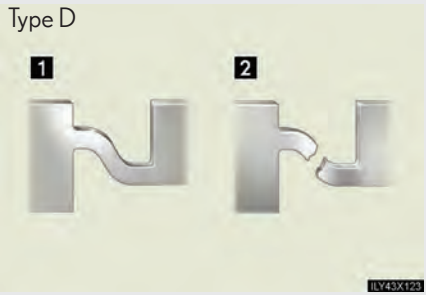
Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type C and D

Type C



Type D



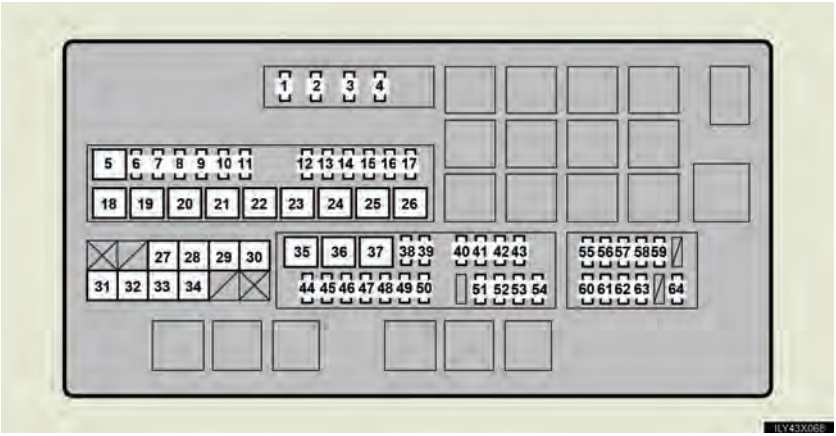
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

Engine compartment



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	A/F	15 A	Exhaust system
2	HORN	10 A	Horn
3	EFI MAIN	25 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, EFI NO.2, exhaust system
4	IG2 MAIN	30 A	INJ, IGN, MET
5	RR A/C	50 A	No circuit
6	SEAT-A/C LH	25 A	Seat heater and ventilators
7	RR S/HTR	20 A	Rear seat heater
8	DEICER	20 A	Windshield wiper de-icer
9	CDS FAN	25 A	Condenser fan
10	TOW TAIL	30 A	Towing tail light system

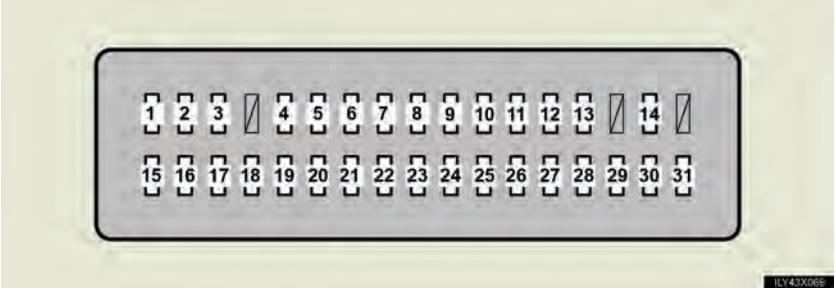
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
11	RR P/SEAT	30 A	Power second seat
12	ALT-CDS	10 A	No circuit
13	FR FOG	15 A	Front fog lights
14	SECURITY	5 A	SECURITY
15	SEAT-A/C RH	25 A	Seat heater and ventilators
16	STOP	15 A	Stoplights, high mounted stoplight, trailer brake system, towing converter, ABS, VSC, main body ECU, EFI
17	TOW BRK	30 A	Trailer brake system
18	RR AUTO A/C	50 A	Rear air conditioning system
19	PTC-1	50 A	PTC heater
20	PTC-2	50 A	PTC heater
21	PTC-3	50 A	PTC heater
22	RH-J/B	50 A	Cowl side junction block RH
23	SUB BATT	40 A	Towing
24	VGRS	40 A	VGRS ECU
25	H-LP CLN	30 A	Headlight cleaner
26	DEFOG	30 A	Rear window defogger
27	AHC	60 A	4-Wheel AHC
28	HTR	50 A	Front air conditioning system
29	PBD	30 A	Power back door ECU
30	LH-J/B	150 A	Cowl side junction block LH

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
31	ALT	180 A	Each fuse
32	A/PUMP NO.1	50 A	Air injection driver
33	A/PUMP NO.2	50 A	Air injection driver 2
34	MAIN	40 A	Headlight, daytime running light system, HEAD LL, HEAD RL, HEAD LH, HEAD RH
35	ABS1	50 A	ABS
36	ABS2	30 A	ABS
37	ST	30 A	Starter system
38	IMB	7.5 A	ID code box, smart access system with push-button start
39	AM2	5 A	Main body ECU
40	DOME2	7.5 A	Vanity lights, overhead module, rear interior light
41	ECU-B2	5 A	Driving position memory system, power back door ECU, power third seat
42	AMP 2	30 A	Audio system
43	RSE	7.5 A	Rear seat entertainment system
44	TOWING	30 A	Towing converter
45	DOOR NO.2	25 A	Main body ECU
46	STR LOCK	20 A	Steering lock system
47	TURN-HAZ	15 A	Gauges and meters, front turn signal lights, rear turn signal lights, towing converter

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
48	EFI MAIN2	20 A	Fuel pump
49	ETCS	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
50	ALT-S	5 A	IC-ALT
51	AMP 1	30 A	Audio system
52	RAD NO.1	10 A	Audio system, navigation system, parking assist system
53	ECU-B1	5 A	Smart access system with push-button start, overhead module, yaw rate & G sensor, tilt and telescopic steering, gauges and meters, cool box, gateway ECU, steering sensor, VGRS
54	DOME1	5 A	Illuminated entry system, power third seat switch, power back door switch, clock
55	HEAD LH	15 A	Headlight high beam (left)
56	HEAD LL	15 A	Headlight low beam (left)
57	INJ	10 A	Injector, ignition system
58	MET	5 A	Gauges and meters
59	IGN	10 A	Circuit open, SRS airbag system, gateway ECU, occupant detection ECU, smart access system with push-button start, ABS, VSC, steering lock system
60	HEAD RH	15 A	Headlight high beam (right)

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
61	HEAD RL	15 A	Headlight low beams (right)
62	EFI NO.2	7.5 A	Air injection system, air flow meter
63	RR A/C NO.2	7.5 A	No circuit
64	DEF NO.2	5 A	Outside rear view mirror defoggers

Driver's side instrument panel



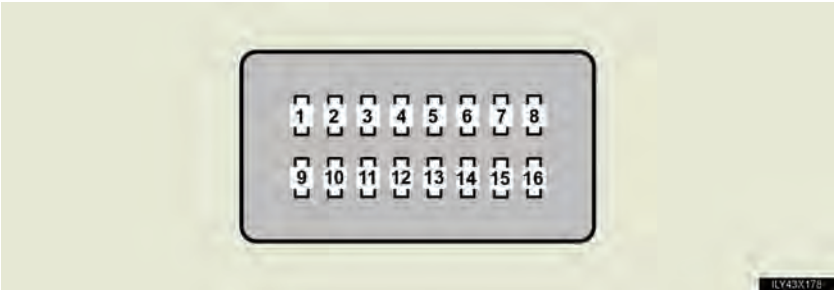
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	CIG	15 A	Cigarette lighter
2	BK/UP LP	10 A	Back-up lights, trailer
3	ACC	7.5 A	Audio system, parking assist system, multi-display assembly, gateway ECU, main body ECU, mirror ECU, satellite radio, smart access system with push-button start

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
4	PANEL	10 A	Ashtray, trailer brake system, cigarette lighter, cool box, center differential lock, driving mode switches, multi-information display, air conditioning system, glove box light, audio system, emergency flashers, headlight cleaner switch, driving position memory switches, outside rear view mirror switches, overhead module, roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch, rear heater panel, shift lever switch, power back door main switch, camera switch, VSC OFF switch, steering switch, console switch, instrument panel light control
5	ECU-IG No.2	10 A	Air conditioning system, rear heater panel, overhead module, ABS, VSC, steering sensor, yaw rate & G sensor, main body ECU, stoplights, moon roof, anti-glare inside rear view mirror
6	WINCH	5 A	No circuit
7	A/C IG	10 A	Cool box, condenser fan, cooler compressor, rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers, smog sensor
8	TAIL	15 A	Tail lights, license plate lights, front fog lights, parking lights, side marker lights

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
9	WIPER	30 A	Windshield wiper
10	WSH	20 A	Windshield washer
11	RR WIPER	15 A	Rear window wiper and washer
12	4WD	20 A	Four-wheel drive system
13	LH-IG	5 A	Alternator, towing, seat heater and ventilators, windshield wiper de-icer, front seat belt, emergency flasher, inverter switch, shift lever switch
14	ECU-IG No.1	5 A	ABS, VSC, tilt and telescopic steering, gateway ECU, shift lock system, parking assist system, cruise control switch, pre-collision system, headlight cleaner, multi-display assembly, rain-sensing windshield wiper, driving position memory system, power door lock system
15	S/ROOF	25 A	Moon roof
16	RR DOOR RH	20 A	Power windows
17	MIR	15 A	Mirror ECU, outside rear view mirror defoggers
18	RR DOOR LH	20 A	Power windows
19	FR DOOR LH	20 A	Power windows
20	FR DOOR RH	20 A	Power windows

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
21	RR FOG	7.5 A	No circuit
22	A/C	7.5 A	Air conditioning system
23	AM1	5 A	No circuit
24	TI & TE	15 A	Tilt and telescopic steering
25	FR P/SEAT RH	30 A	Power seat
26	PWR OUTLET	15 A	Power outlet
27	OBD	7.5 A	On-Board diagnosis
28	PSB	30 A	Pre-collision system
29	DOOR NO.1	25 A	Main body ECU
30	FR P/SEAT LH	30 A	Power seat
31	INVERTER	15 A	Inverter

Passenger's side instrument panel



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	RSF LH	30 A	Third seat adjustment (left)
2	B/DR CLSR RH	30 A	Back door closer
3	B/DR CLSR LH	30 A	Back door closer
4	RSF RH	30 A	Third seat adjustment (right)
5	DOOR DL	15 A	No circuit
6	AHC-B	20 A	4-Wheel AHC
7	TEL	5 A	Multimedia
8	TOW BK/UP	7.5 A	Towing
9	AHC-B No.2	10 A	4-Wheel AHC
10	ECU-IG No.4	5 A	VGRS, power back door, rear ECU, 4-Wheel AHC, third seat adjustment, tire pressure warning system ECU

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
11	SEAT-A/C FAN	10 A	Ventilators
12	SEAT-HTR	20 A	Seat heaters
13	AFS	5 A	Adaptive front-lighting system
14	ECU-IG No.3	5 A	Adaptive front-lighting system, dynamic radar cruise control system
15	STRG HTR	10 A	Heated steering wheel
16	TV	10 A	Multi-display assembly

■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 630)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If there is an overload in the circuits**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

CAUTION

To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
  This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify the fuse or the fuse box.

NOTICE

Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.

For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

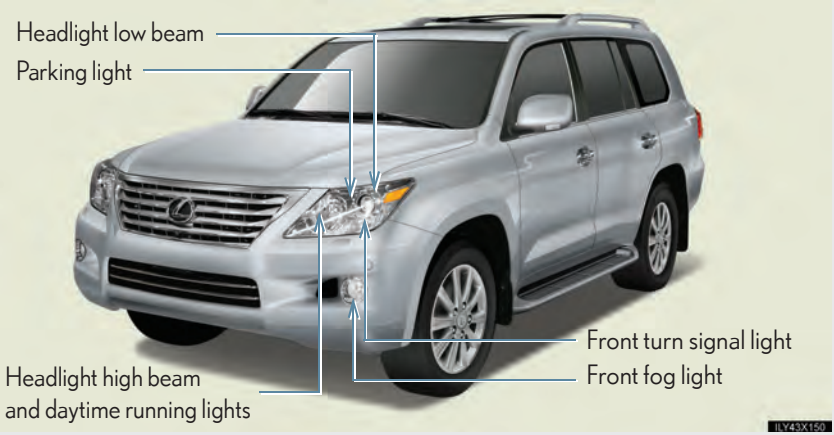
Prepare a replacement light bulb

Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 707)

Remove the engine compartment cover

→P. 577

Front bulb locations



Rear bulb locations



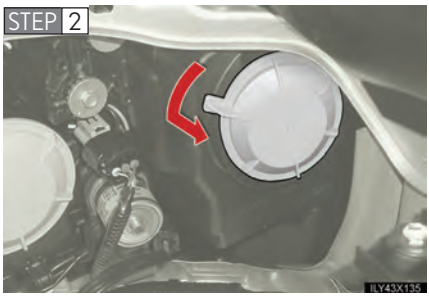
Replacing light bulbs

Headlight low beams



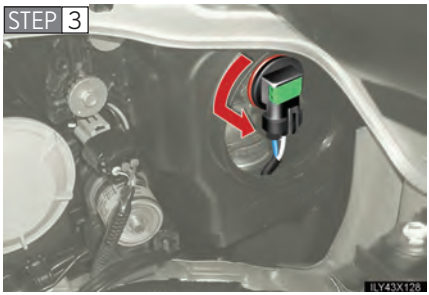
For the left side only: Remove the securing bolt and move the washer fluid filler opener.

STEP 2



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

STEP 3



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

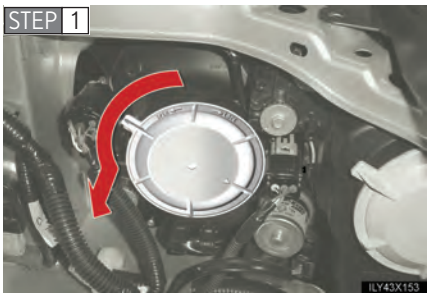
STEP 4



Unplug the connector while pulling the lock release.

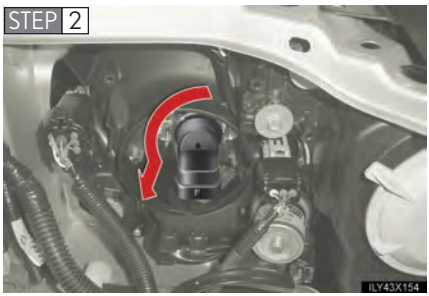
Headlight high beam and daytime running lights

STEP 1



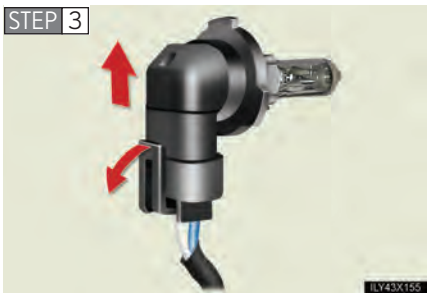
Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3



Unplug the connector while pulling the lock release.

Front fog lights

STEP 1



Remove the fender liner bolts, loose the fender liner nut and remove the fender liner.

1 Fender liner nut
2 Fender liner bolts

STEP 2



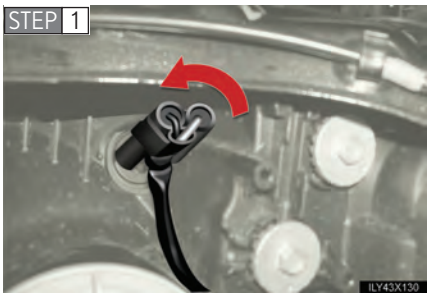
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3

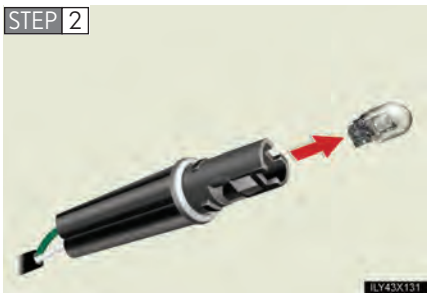


Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

Parking lights



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

Front turn signal lights

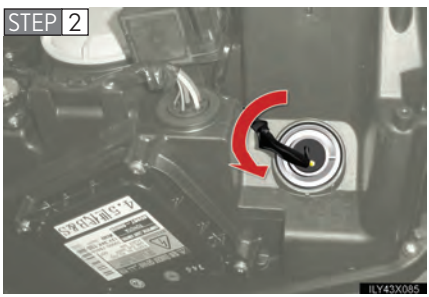
STEP 1



Remove the fender liner bolts, loose the fender liner nut and remove the fender liner.

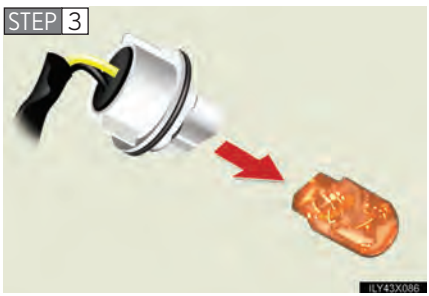
1 Fender liner nut
2 Fender liner bolts

STEP 2



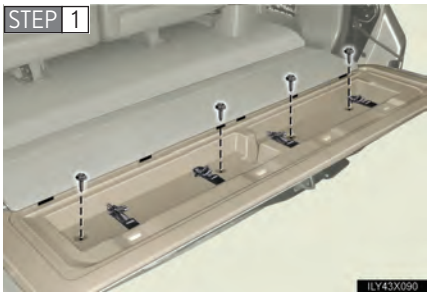
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3

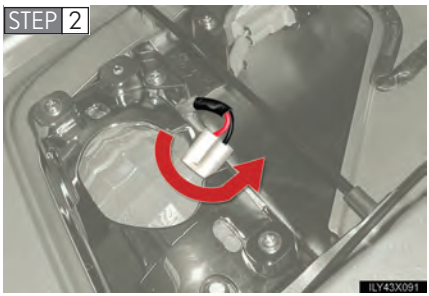


Remove the light bulb.

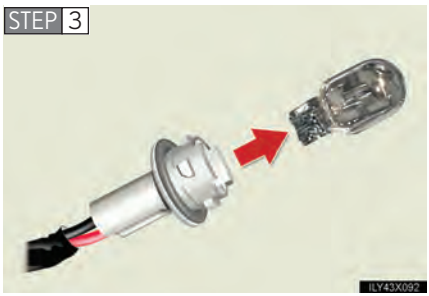
Back-up lights



Open the back door and remove the bolts and the cover.

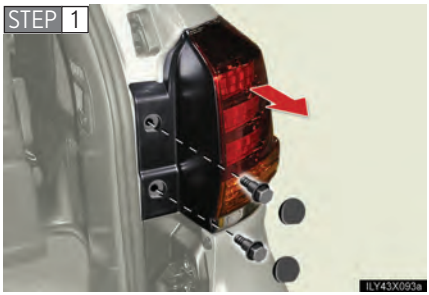


Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.

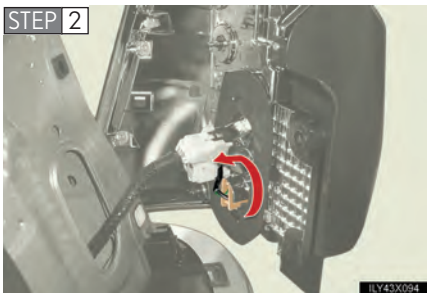


Remove the light bulb.

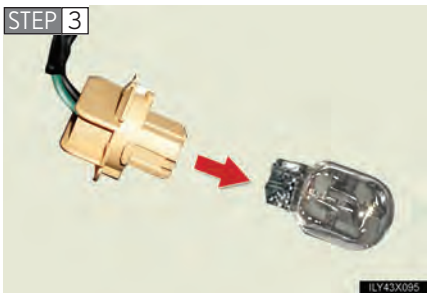
Rear turn signal lights



Open the back door and remove the bolts and lamp assembly.



Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

Lights other than the above

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Front side marker lights
- High mounted stoplight
- Stop/tail lights
- Tail lights
- Rear side marker lights
- License plate lights

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer, for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

LED lights

The front side marker lights, stop/tail lights, tail lights, rear side marker lights, high mounted stoplight and license plate lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
  If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts.
  Doing so may result in death or serious injury due to electric shock.

■ To prevent damage or fire

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers..... 642

If your vehicle needs to be towed..... 643

If you think something is wrong 649

Fuel pump shut off system 650

Event data recorder 651

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds..... 653

If a warning message is displayed..... 664

If you have a flat tire..... 667

If the engine will not start 681

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 683

If you lose your keys 684

If you cannot operate back door opener 685

If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 686

If the battery is discharged 689

If your vehicle overheats 692

If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 695

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 696

Emergency flashers

Use the emergency flashers if the vehicle malfunctions or is involved in an accident.



Press the switch to flash all the turn signal lights. To turn them off, press the switch once again.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flat bed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.
Use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer, before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

▶ Towing hook



Emergency towing procedure

STEP 1 The "ENGINE START STOP" switch must be in ACCESSORY mode (engine off) or IGNITION ON mode (engine running).

STEP 2 Put the four-wheel drive control switch in "H4". (The center differential is unlocked.)

STEP 3 Put the vehicle height in the "N" mode and press the height control switch to turn off the AHC.

STEP 4 Put the shift lever in "N".

STEP 5 Release the parking brake.

⚠ CAUTION

■ While towing

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
  Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and the cables or chains. Always be cautious of the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission

- Never tow this vehicle with the wheels on the ground.
- Use only the front emergency towing hook or towing eyelets when towing your vehicle.

Towing with a sling-type truck



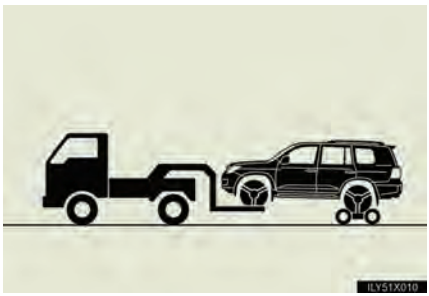
NOTICE

To prevent body damage

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

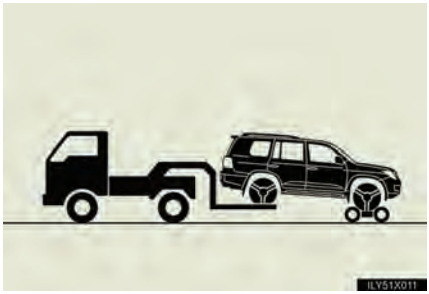
Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

▶ From front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

⚠ NOTICE

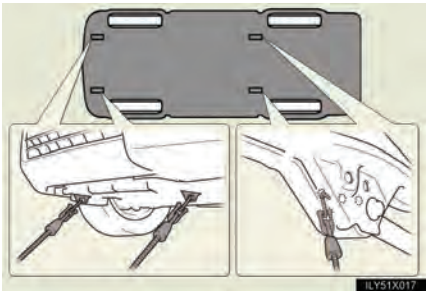
■ **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission**

Never tow this vehicle wheels on the ground.

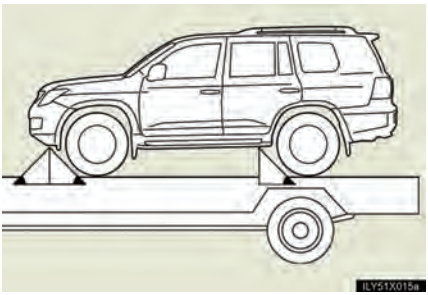
■ **To prevent damaging the vehicle**

- Do not tow the vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.
  The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheel straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration. When attaching the hooks to the rear of the vehicle, make sure to attach them to the inside of the vehicle.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

NOTICE

To avoid serious damage to your vehicle



Do not use the rear emergency towing hook.

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal
- Engine oil pressure gauge continually points lower than normal.
- Voltmeter continually points higher or lower than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode or OFF.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is a system to record data in a crash or a near car crash event. This is called an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- Front passenger's occupant classification
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data
- Whether the "RSCA OFF" indicator was turned on or off

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)*** • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the brake system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally.

*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:

A buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	**Charging system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system.

Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Indicates a malfunction in: • The emission control system; • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; • The electronic automatic transmission control system.
	**SRS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; • The front passenger occupant classification system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system.
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**ABS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; • The brake assist system
 (Comes on or flashes)	**Pre-collision system warning light (if equipped)** Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	**Slip indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC; • The TRAC; • The hill-start assist control system; • Crawl Control system
 (Flashes)	**Cruise control indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system.
 (Flashes)	**"AFS OFF" indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in the AFS.

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Open door warning light (warning buzzer)**[*1] Indicates that a door is not fully closed.	Check that all doors are closed.
	**Low fuel level warning light** Indicates that remaining fuel is about 4.0 gal. (15.0 L, 3.3 Imp. gal.) or less	Refuel the vehicle.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
 (on the center panel)	**Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	**Tire pressure warning light**	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 659) • Flat tire (→P. 667)	Adjust the tire inflation pressure (including the spare tire) to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. (→P. 661)	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	**Unengaged "Park" warning light** Indicates that the transmission "Park" mechanism is not engaged.	Shift four-wheel drive control to "H4" or "L4". (→P. 258)

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on or flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	Take appropriate action in accordance with the message displayed on the multi-information display.

*1: Open door warning buzzer:

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

*2: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminders:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts reminder sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his/her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

First check the following:

- Is the fuel empty?
  If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
  If it is, tighten it securely.

The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light blinks**

Take the specified steps. (→P. 261)

If the brake system warning light or the malfunction indicator light also comes on, or the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light continues to blink after taking the specified steps, there may be a malfunction in the engine, the brake system or the four-wheel drive system. In this case, you may not be able to transfer between "H4" and "L4" modes, and the center differential lock may not be able to be locked or unlocked. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **SRS warning light**

This warning light system monitors the following:

- The airbag sensor assembly
- Front airbag sensors
- The curtain and rear side sensors
- The side and curtain shield airbag sensors
- Floor sensor
- The driver's seat belt buckle switch
- The driver's seat position sensor
- Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
- The inflators
- The interconnecting wiring and power sources
- The front passenger occupant classification system
- "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights
- The seatbelt pretensioners
- The "RSCA OFF" indicator light

■ **Changing the engine oil**

Make sure to reset oil change system

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative

The tire pressure warning system will become inoperative in the following conditions: (When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions: (When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the luggage compartment.

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

⚠ CAUTION

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

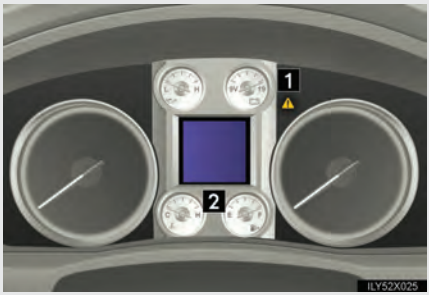
⚠ NOTICE

Precaution when installing a different tire

A tire of a different specification or maker may cause the tire pressure warning system to not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, or shows messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



1 Master warning light

The master warning light comes on or flashes when a message is being shown on the multi-information display.

2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning messages is shown again after its correction procedure has been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected immediately by your Lexus dealer.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed.
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the system shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning.
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance.
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly.

*: A buzzer sounds first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ **System warning lights**

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on or flash along with the message shown on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System)
  The "AFS OFF" indicator light flashes. (→P. 195)
- Malfunction of the brake system
  The brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on. (→P. 653)
- Malfunction of the ABS
  The ABS warning light comes on. (→P. 654)
- Malfunction of the charging system
  The charging system warning light comes on. (→P. 653)

■ **Resetting the tire pressure warning data**

After adjusting the tire inflation pressure, be sure to initialize the data. (→P. 595)

If the message remains on, the system may have malfunctioned. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Warning messages in the cruise control mode**

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the approach warning will not illuminate even when vehicle-to-vehicle distance is closing.

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle's speed.
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed.
- Immediately after the cruise control speed has been set.
- At the instant the accelerator is applied.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Engine oil maintenance message**

The warning message is based on the projected driving range after engine oil maintenance message is reset.

The system does not monitor the purity of the engine oil.

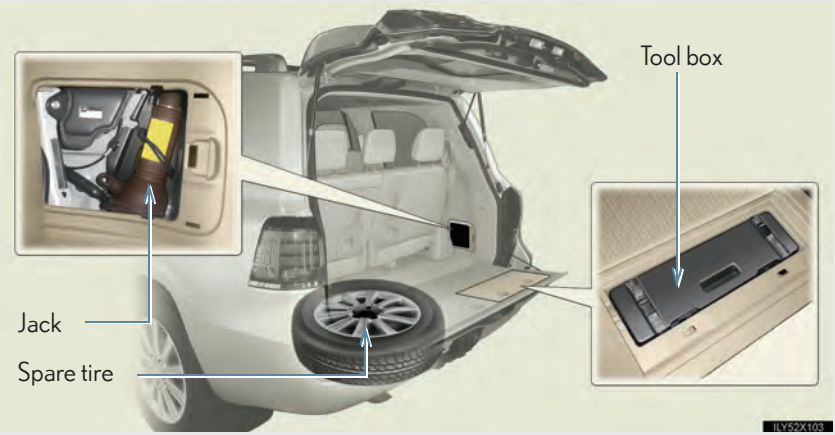
If you have a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

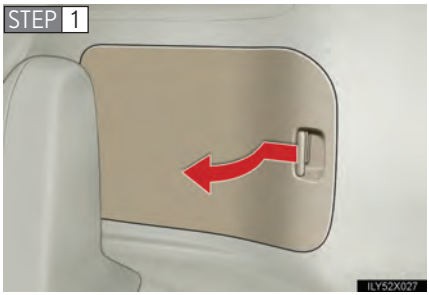
Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to "P".
- Turn off the 4-Wheel AHC. (→P. 246)
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

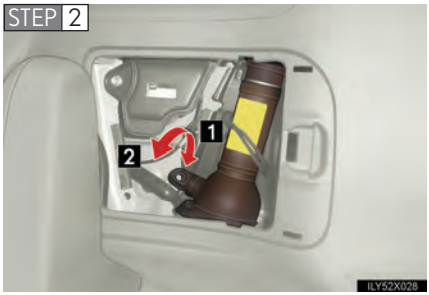
Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



Taking out the jack

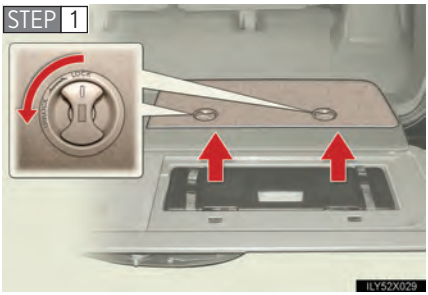


Remove the cover.

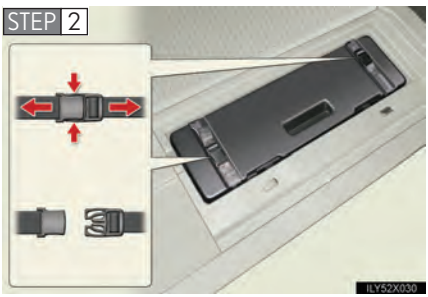


1 Loosen
2 Tighten
Loosen and remove the jack.

Taking out the tool box



Remove the cover.

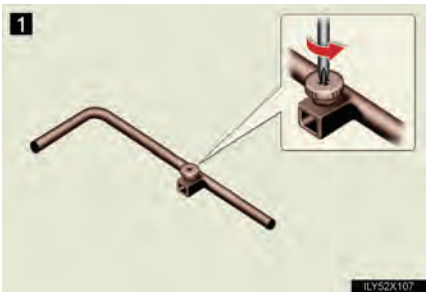


Take out the tool box.

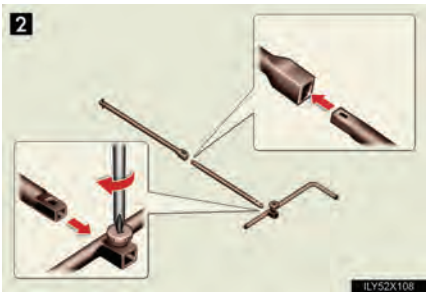
Taking out the spare tire

STEP 1 Assembling the jack handle.

Remove the jack handle and the jack extension bar from the tool box and assemble by following these steps.

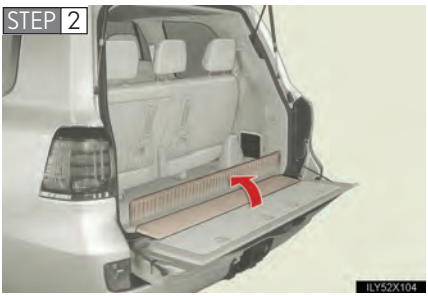


1 Loosen the screw using a screwdriver.



2 Assemble the jack handle and the jack handle extension bar and tighten the screw.

Check that the screw is firmly tightened.



Open the cover.

STEP 3



Insert the jack handle extension into the lowering screw.

1 Lower

2 Raise

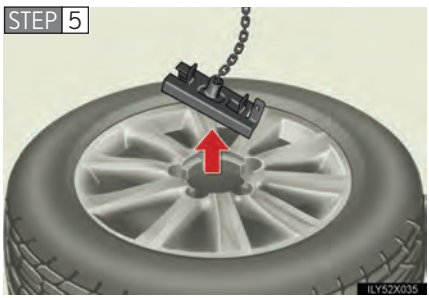
Place a rag under the jack handle extension to protect the back door.

STEP 4



Lower the spare tire completely to the ground.

STEP 5



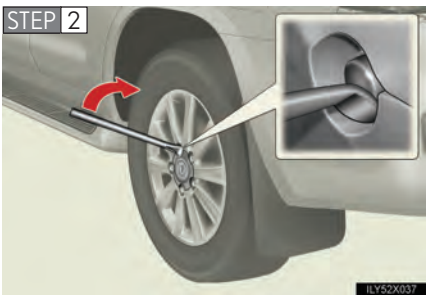
Pull out the spare tire and remove the holding bracket.

Replacing a flat tire



Chock the tires.

Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire



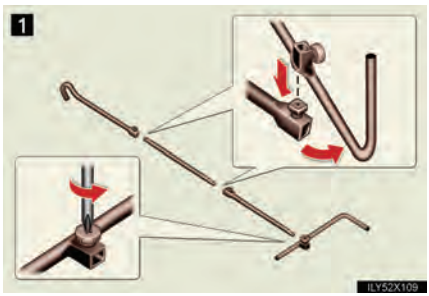
Pry off the wheel ornament, using the beveled end of the wheel ornament remover as shown.



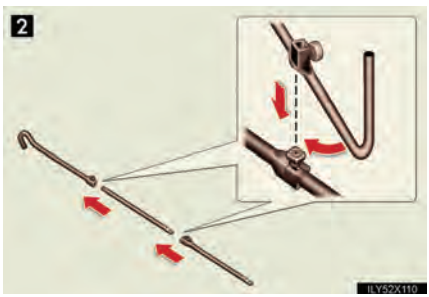
Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

STEP 4 Assembling the jack handle.

Remove the jack handle, jack extension bar and jack handle bar from the tool box and assemble by following these steps.

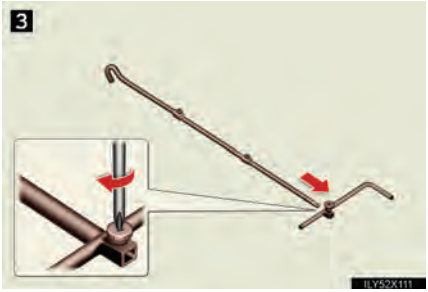


1 Loosen the bolts and the screw using either the jack handle or a screwdriver.



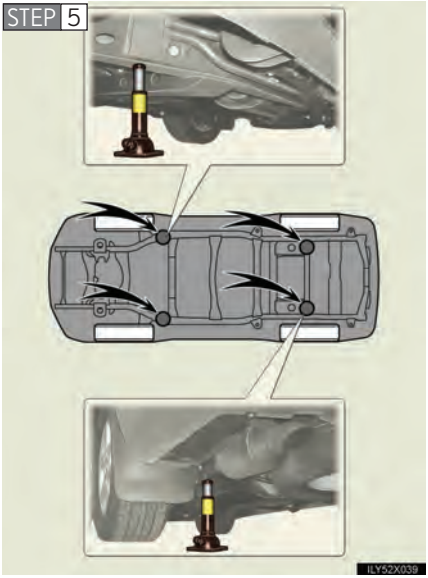
2 Assemble the jack handle extension bar and the jack handle bar and tighten the bolts.

Check that the bolts are firmly tightened.



3 Assemble the jack handle extension bar and the jack handle and tighten the screw.

Check that the screw is firmly tightened.



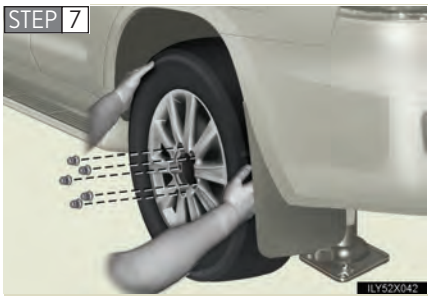
Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

Front - Under the chassis frame side rail

Rear - Under the rear axle housing



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

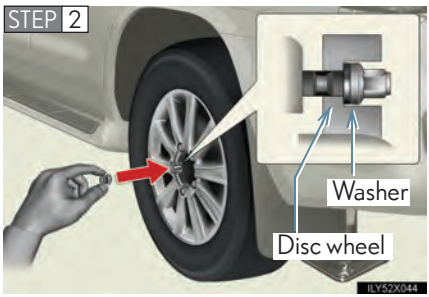
When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

Installing the spare tire



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

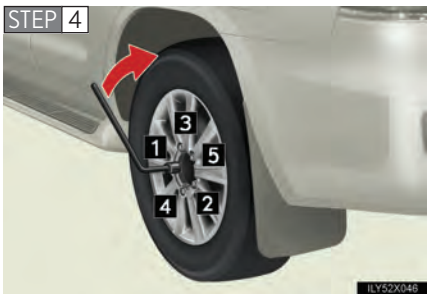


Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

Turn the nut washers until they come into contact with the disc wheel.

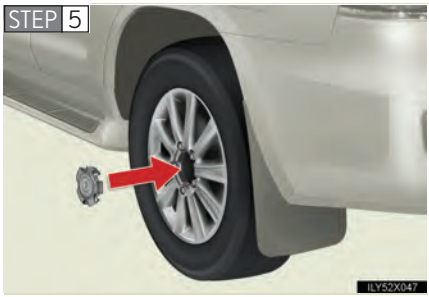


Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m)



Reinstall the wheel ornament.

Stowing the flat/spare tire, jack and tools



Lay down the tire with the outer side facing up, and install the holding bracket.

STEP 2 Raise the tire.

STEP 3 Stow the tools and jack securely, and replace all covers.

After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 595)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or serious injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Be sure to turn off the active height control suspension and stop the engine.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle will be injured.

■ Using the jack handle

Tighten all the jack handle bolts securely using a Phillips-head screwdriver, to prevent the extension parts from coming apart unexpectedly.

⚠ CAUTION

Replacing a flat tire

- Observe the following precautions.
  Failure to do so may result in serious injury:
  - Lower the spare tire completely to the ground before removing it from under the vehicle.
  - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
  - Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
    After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
    Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
  - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
  - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

■ When stowing the flat tire

Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.

■ When replacing the tires

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Replace the grommets for the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters as well.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 594)

If the engine will not start

If the engine still does not start after following the correct starting procedure (→P. 172) or releasing the steering lock (→P. 174), confirm the following points.

The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 172)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 116)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 689)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 682)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 689)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

  Contact your Lexus dealer, if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is functioning normally.

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Put the shift lever in "P".

STEP 3 Set the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Push and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Set the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the ACCESSORY mode.

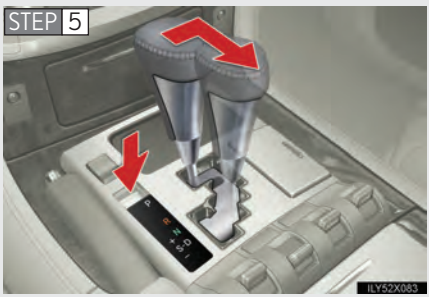
STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.

STEP 4



Pry the cover up with a flathead screw driver or equivalent.

STEP 5



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

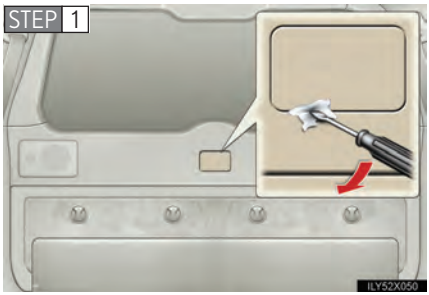
If you lose your keys

New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer, using one of the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

If you cannot operate back door opener

If the back door opener does not operate, there may be a problem with the back door opener system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the back door can be opened from the inside.

STEP 1



Remove the cover on the back door trim.

Use a cloth to prevent scratches.

STEP 2

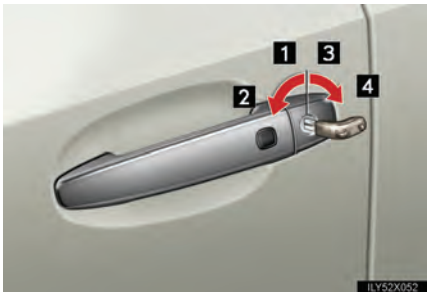


Push the lever for the back door motor, open the back door.

If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 37) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors and key linked functions



Using the mechanical key (→P. 29) in order to perform the following operations.

1 Locks all doors

2 Closes the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)*

3 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

4 Opens the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)*

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes and starting the engine

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to "P" and apply the brakes.

STEP 2



Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key (including the card key) to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

An alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the electronic key that is touched to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch if any of the doors is opened and closed while the key is touched to the switch.

STEP 3 To change "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes: Within 5 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 173)

To start the engine: Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 5 seconds after the buzzer sounds, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch still cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to "P" and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As this above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery depletes. (→P. 611)

■ **Alarm**

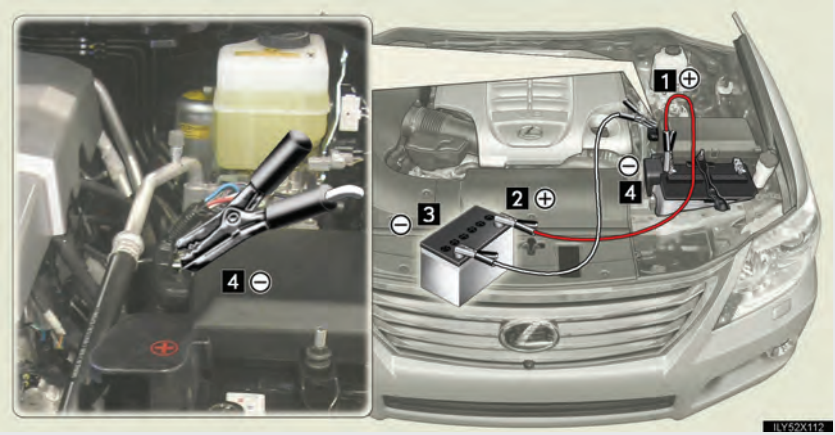
Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P. 118)

If the battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

STEP 1 Connect the jumper cables.



1 Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
2 Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
3 Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
4 Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

STEP 2 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

STEP 3 Open and close any of the doors with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 4 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, then start the vehicle's engine.

STEP 5 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer, as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **Avoiding a discharged battery**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is turned off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the "+" and "-" terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery.

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.

If your vehicle overheats

If your engine overheats:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

Wait until the engine coolant temperature gauge begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and call your Lexus dealer.

STEP 4



After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

If the engine compartment cover needs to be removed: →P. 577



Add engine coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 702)

Have the vehicle checked at the nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Overheating

If you observe the following, your vehicle may be overheating.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

CAUTION

To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and other belts while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

NOTICE

When adding engine coolant

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.

STEP 1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and put the shift lever in "P".

STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.

STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.

STEP 4 Restart the engine.

STEP 5 Turn off VSC. (→P. 269)

STEP 6 Shift the shift lever to the "D" or "R" position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and do not rev the engine.
- If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to "N".

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to "N"

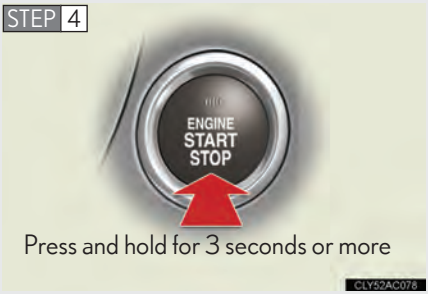
STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to "N"

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

STEP 4



Stop the engine by pressing and holding the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for 3 consecutive seconds or more.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

Vehicle specifications 6

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 698

Fuel information 708

Tire information 711

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 722

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 732

Dimensions and weights

Overall length		196.5 in. (4990 mm)
Overall width		77.6 in. (1970 mm)
Overall height*1		75.6 in. (1920 mm)*2 75.2 in. (1910 mm)*3 73.4 in. (1865 mm)*4
Wheelbase		112.2 in. (2850 mm)
Tread	Front	64.6 in. (1640 mm)
	Rear	64.4 in. (1635 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		1230 lb. (560 kg)
TWR (trailer weight + cargo weight)	With brake	7000 lb. (3175 kg)
	Without brake	1000 lb. (454 kg)

*1: Unladen vehicles

*2: Vehicles with roof luggage carrier

*3: Vehicles with an antenna and without roof luggage carrier

*4: Vehicles without an antenna and roof luggage carrier

Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

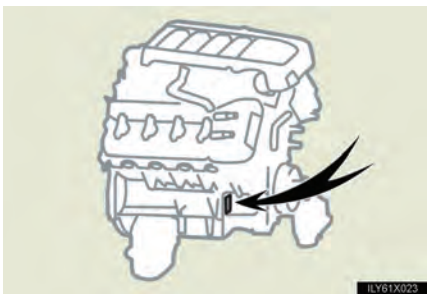


This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

Engine number



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

Engine

Model	3UR-FE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 4.02 in. (94.0 × 102.0 mm)
Displacement	345.6 cu.in. (5663 cm^3)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	24.5 gal. (93 L, 20.4 Imp.gal.)

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*)	
With filter	7.9 qt. (7.5 L, 6.6 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	7.5 qt. (7.1 L, 6.2 Imp.qt.)

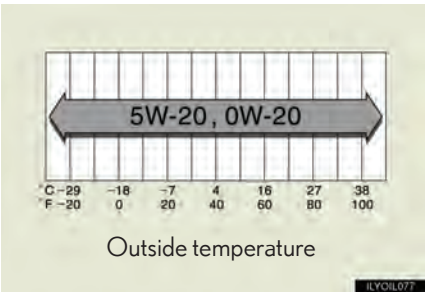
*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity: SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20



SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20 engine oil may be used. However, SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



Cooling system

Capacity	17.6 qt. (16.7 L, 14.6 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following. • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug Make DENSO	SK20HR11
Gap	0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.

Electrical system

Battery Open voltage at 68°F (20°C):	12.6—12.8 V Fully charged 12.2—12.4 V Half charged 11.8—12.0 V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the engine and all lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5 A max.

Differential

Oil capacity Front Rear	 2.01 qt. (1.90 L, 1.67 Imp.qt.) 4.44 qt. (4.20 L, 3.70 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.
Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity	With air-cooled type ATF cooler	12.6 qt. (11.9 L, 10.5 Imp.qt.)
	Without air-cooled type ATF cooler	12.3 qt. (11.6 L, 10.2 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer

Oil capacity	1.53 qt. (1.45 L, 1.28 Imp.qt.)
Oil type*	Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF or equivalent
Recommended oil viscosity	SAE 75W

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance *1	2.6 in. (67 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.24 in. (1.0 — 6.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lever travel *2	5 — 7 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

*1: Minimum pedal clearance from Tibia-pad when depressed with a force of 110 lbf (490 N, 50 kgf) while the engine is running

*2: Parking brake lever travel when pulled up with a force of 45.0 lbf (200 N, 20.4 kgf)

Chassis lubrication

Propeller shafts Spider Slide yoke	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 Molybdenum-disulfide lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 or Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.18 in. (30 mm)
Power steering fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

Suspension

Fluid type	Suspension fluid AHC

Tires and wheels

Tire size	P285/50R20 111V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Normal driving Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Trailer towing Add 2 psi (10 kPa, 0.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the rear tires.
Wheel size	20 × 8 1/2J
Wheel nut torque	97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m)

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights			
	Low beam	—	55	A
	High beam	9005	60	B
	Front turn signal lights	3457	28	C
	Parking lights	—	5	C
	Front fog lights	—	55	A
	Rear turn signal lights	—	21	C
	Back-up lights	921	18	C
	Running board lights	—	3.8	C
Interior	Front interior light	—	8	C
	Rear interior lights	—	8	C
	Vanity lights	—	2	D
	Door courtesy lights	—	5	C
	Glove box light	—	1.2	C
	Luggage compartment light	—	8	E
	Deck light	—	5	E

A: H11 halogen bulbs
B: HB3 halogen bulbs
C: Wedge base bulbs
D: Single end bulbs
E: Double end bulbs

Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.
Premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance. If 91 octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91). Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

■ **Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline**

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ **If your engine knocks**

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ **Gasoline quality**

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ **Gasoline quality standards**

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

■ **Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives**

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

■ **Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline**

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ **Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline**

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

⚠ NOTICE

Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
  Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than that stated here will cause persistent heavy knocking.
  At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

Fuel-related poor driveability

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

When refueling with gasohole

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

Typical tire symbols



1 Tire size (→P. 713)

2 Summer tire or all season tire (→P. 597)

An all season tire has "M+S" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "M+S" is a summer tire.

3 Uniform tire quality grading

For details, see "Uniform Tire Quality Grading" that follows.

4 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 712)

5 Tire ply composition and materials

Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

6 Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 593)

7 Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 716)

8 Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 716)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

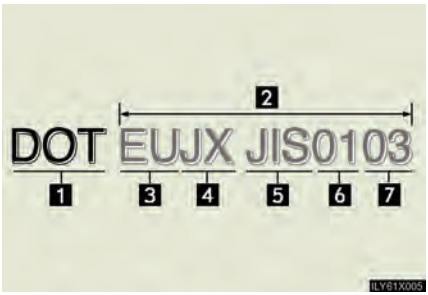
9 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

10 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.

Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)

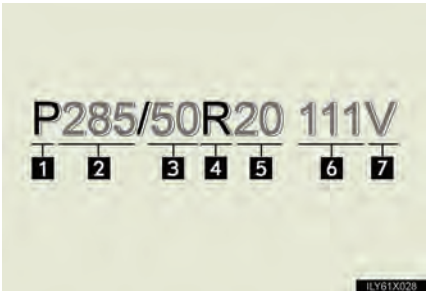


1 DOT symbol*
2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)
3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark
4 Tire size code
5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
6 Manufacturing week
7 Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Tire size

Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

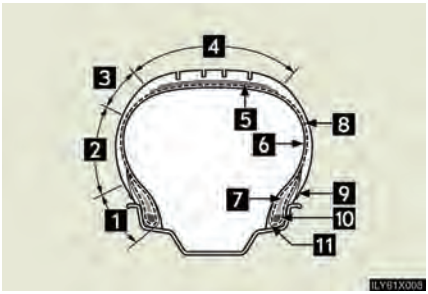
1 Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)
2 Section width (millimeters)
3 Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)
4 Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
5 Wheel diameter (inches)
6 Load index (2 or 3 digits)
7 Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)

Tire dimensions



1 Section width
2 Tire height
3 Wheel diameter

Tire section names



1 Bead
2 Sidewall
3 Shoulder
4 Tread
5 Belt
6 Inner liner
7 Reinforcing rubber
8 Carcass
9 Rim lines
10 Bead wires
11 Chafer

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S.A. Department of Transportation.
It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below

Tire related term	Meaning
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim

Tire related term	Meaning
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass

Tire related term	Meaning
Intended outboard sidewall	(a)The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b)The outward facing sidewall of asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs

Tire related term	Meaning
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall

Tire related term	Meaning
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol () on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

*: Table 1— Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences.
Programming of these preferences can be performed by your Lexus dealer.

It is also possible to customize certain vehicle features yourself using the touch screen.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

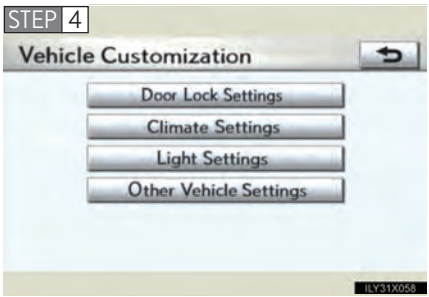
Customizing vehicle features using the touch screen

STEP 1 Press SETUP.

STEP 2 Touch "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Vehicle Customization".

STEP 4



Touch the setting to be changed. Change each setting and touch "Save".

If "Save" is not touched before switching to another screen, any changes will be lost.

STEP 5 A message indicating that the settings are being saved will appear.
Do not perform any other operations while this message is displayed.

Customizable features

Vehicle customization settings can be changed at your Lexus dealer. Some settings can be changed using the touch screen.

1 Settings that can be changed using the touch screen
2 Settings that can be changed using the vehicle switches
3 Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – = Not available

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 33)	Smart access system with push-button start	ON	OFF	O	–	O
	Smart door unlocking	Driver's door	All the doors	O	O	O
	Operation signal (Buzzer)	ON	OFF	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Wireless remote control (→P. 46)	Wireless remote control	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Open door warning function (when locking the vehicle)	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step	O	–	O
	Power back door operation	Push and hold	One short push	–	–	O
			Push twice	–	–	O
			OFF	–	–	O
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 33) and wireless remote control (→P. 46)	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF	O	–	O
	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	OFF	O	–	O
			30 seconds			
			120 seconds			

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Door lock (→P. 49)	Unlocking using a mechanical key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step	O	–	O
	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	OFF	ON	O	O	O
	Shifting the shift lever to position other than "P" locks all doors	ON	OFF	O	O	O
	Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors	ON	OFF	O	O	O
	Opening the driver's door unlocks all doors	OFF	ON	O	O	O
Power back door (→P. 54)	Switch operation	Push and hold	One short push	–	–	O
	Operation signal	OFF	ON	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation (one motion)	ON*1	OFF*2	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Power windows (→P. 107)	Mechanical key linked operation	OFF	ON	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation (open)	OFF	ON	–	–	O
	Linked entry function (close)	OFF	ON	–	–	O
Moon roof (→P. 110)	Mechanical key linked operation*3	OFF	ON	–	–	O
	Linked operation of components when mechanical key is use	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation (open)*4	OFF	ON	–	–	O
	Linked operation of components when wireless remote control used	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	O
	Linked entry function*5	OFF	ON	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Automatic light control system (→P. 194)	Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	–	O
	Daytime running light system	ON	OFF*6	O	–	O
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	OFF	O	–	O
			60 seconds			
			90 seconds			
Rear window wiper and washer (→P. 202)	Switching operation when the vehicle is stationary	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Drip prevention function	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Rear window wiper operation linked with washer	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Linked operation when the shift lever in "R" position	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Times of the linked operation when the shift lever in "R" position	Once	Continuously	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Illumination (→P. 514)	Time period before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	OFF	O	–	O
			7.5 seconds			
			30 seconds			
	Time period before the exterior lights turn off	15 seconds	OFF	O	–	O
			7.5 seconds			
			30 seconds			
	Operation after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person (When the interior light switch is door position)	ON	OFF	–	–	O
	Foot lights	ON	OFF	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Illumination (→P. 514)	Outer foot lights	OFF	ON	–	–	O
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for dimming the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2	O	–	O
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for brightening the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2	O	–	O
Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 338)	Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	Standard	-3 to 3	O	–	O
	Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	Auto	Manual	O	–	O
	A/C Auto switch operation	Auto	Manual	O	–	O

*1: In this case, the power back door operation will be made only by push and hold.

*2: The back door can be opened using the wireless remote control after unlocking the back door.

*3: The settings can be changed when the mechanical key linked operation of the power window is set to ON.

*4: The settings can be changed when the wireless remote control linked operation of the power window is set to ON.

*5: The settings can be changed when the entry function linked operation of the power window is set to ON.

*6: Vehicles sold outside Canada

■ **Vehicle customization**

- If the smart access system with push-button start is turned "OFF", unlock door cannot be selected.
- If the doors are not opened after locking and are then automatically re-locked, a signal will be given if "Operation signal (Emergency flashers)" or "Operation signal (Buzzer)" are set to ON.

■ **When setting using the vehicle switches**

When using the vehicle switches to set an item that can also be set using the touch screen, the item displayed on the touch screen will not change immediately.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is first turned to OFF, the screen display will change once the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode again.

■ **When customizing using the touch screen**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to "P". Also, to prevent battery discharge, leave the engine running while customizing the features.

CAUTION

During customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Multi-information display (→P. 191)

Available languages	English (U.S.A.), English (UK), French, German, Spanish, Italian, Japanese, Simplified Chinese and Traditional Chinese

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after the battery is reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Power back door	• After reconnecting or changing the battery with power back door opened • After changing a fuse with power back door opened	P. 57
Maintenance data	• After the maintenance is performed	P. 565
Tire pressure warning system	• When the set tire pressure has been changed before towing with the P285/50R20 tires. • When rotating the tires in above situation. • When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.	P. 594

For owners 7

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 734
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 735
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 737

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.

See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

Utilisation adéquate des ceintures de sécurité



- Tirez sur la ceinture épaulière jusqu'à ce qu'elle recouvre entièrement l'épaule; elle ne doit cependant pas toucher le cou ni glisser de l'épaule.
- Placez la ceinture abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
- Réglez la position du dossier. Tenez-vous assis bien au fond du siège, le dos droit.
- Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

Entretien et soin

Ceintures de sécurité

Avec un tissu ou une éponge, nettoyez à l'aide d'un savon doux et de l'eau tiède. Vérifiez aussi les ceintures régulièrement pour vous assurer qu'elles ne présentent pas d'usure excessive, d'effilochage ou de coupures.

⚠ ATTENTION

Lorsque vous utilisez la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges



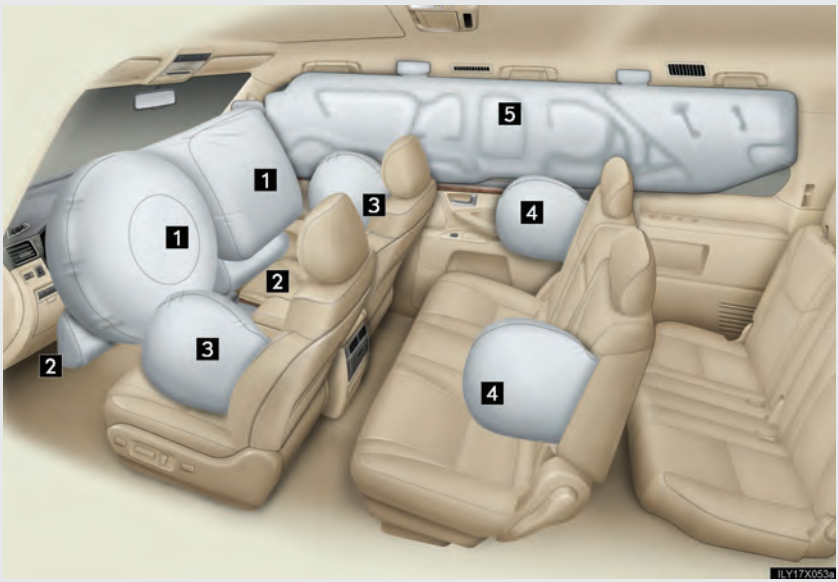
N'utilisez pas la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges si l'une des boucles est retirée. Fixer une seule boucle pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, en cas de freinage brusque ou de collision.

Dommages et usure de la ceinture de sécurité

Vérifiez périodiquement le système de ceintures de sécurité. Assurez-vous qu'il n'y a pas de coupures, d'effilochures ni de pièces desserrées. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité endommagée avant qu'elle soit remplacée. Une ceinture de sécurité endommagée ne peut pas protéger les occupants contre des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

The following is a French explanation of SRS airbag instructions extracted from the SRS airbag section in this manual.

See the SRS airbag section for more detailed SRS airbag instructions in English.



▶ Coussins gonflables avant

1 Coussin gonflable du conducteur/du passager avant
Peut protéger la tête et la poitrine du conducteur et du passager avant contre les impacts avec des composants intérieurs.

2 Coussins gonflables de protection des genoux
Peuvent protéger le conducteur et le passager avant.

▶ Coussins gonflables latéraux et en rideau

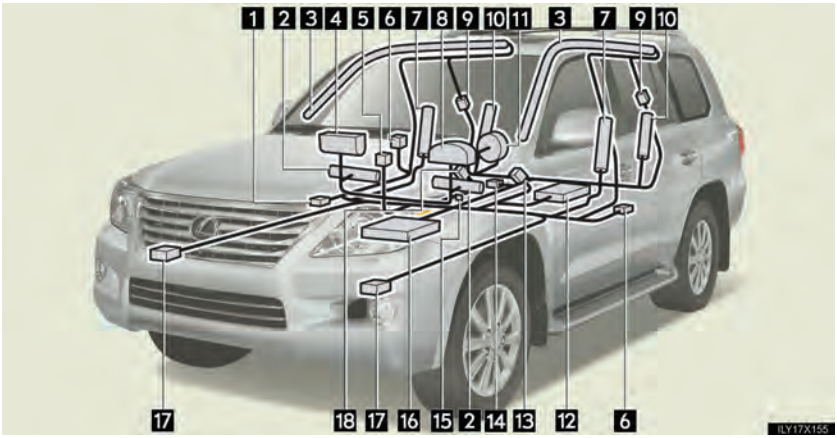
3 Coussins gonflables latéraux
Peuvent protéger le torse des occupants des sièges avant.

4 Coussins gonflables latéraux
Peuvent protéger le torse des occupants de la deuxième rangée de sièges latéraux.

5 Coussins gonflables en rideau

- Peuvent surtout protéger la tête des occupants des sièges avant.
- Peuvent surtout protéger la tête des occupants de la deuxième rangée de sièges latéraux.
- Peuvent surtout protéger la tête des occupants de la troisième rangée de sièges.

Composants du système de coussins gonflables



1 Système de classification de l'occupant du siège du passager avant (ECU et capteurs)
2 Coussins gonflables de protection des genoux
3 Coussins gonflables en rideau
4 Coussin gonflable du passager avant
5 Lampes témoins AIR BAG ON et AIR BAG OFF
6 Capteurs des coussins gonflables latéraux et en rideau
7 Coussins gonflables latéraux (sièges avant)
8 Lampes témoins SRS et "RSCA OFF"
9 Capteur de coussin gonflable en rideau et latéral arrière
10 Coussins gonflables latéraux (deuxième rangée de sièges latéraux)
11 Coussin gonflable du conducteur
12 Capteur de position de siège du conducteur
13 Contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité du conducteur
14 Capteur de plancher
15 Contacteur de désactivation des coussins gonflables en rideau en cas de tonneaux
16 Module de capteur de coussin gonflable
17 Capteurs des coussins gonflables avant
18 Contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité du passager avant

Votre véhicule est équipé de COUSSINS GONFLABLES ÉVOLUÉS dont la conception s'appuie sur les normes de sécurité des véhicules à moteur américains (FMVSS208). Le système de coussins gonflables contrôle la puissance de déploiement des coussins du conducteur et du passager avant.
Le système de coussin gonflable du conducteur est constitué du capteur de position du siège du conducteur, etc. Le système de coussin gonflable du passager avant est constitué du capteur de classification de l'occupant du siège du passager avant, etc.

Les composants principaux du système de coussins gonflables SRS sont illustrés ci-dessus. Le système de coussins gonflables SRS est contrôlé par le module de capteur de coussin gonflable. Le module de capteur de coussin gonflable est constitué d'un capteur de sûreté et d'un capteur de coussin gonflable.

Lors de certains types de collision frontale ou latérale violente, le système de coussins gonflables SRS déclenche les gonfleurs des coussins. Une réaction chimique se produit dans les gonfleurs et les coussins gonflables se remplissent rapidement d'un gaz non toxique pour empêcher tout mouvement des occupants.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS

Observez les précautions suivantes en ce qui concerne les coussins gonflables. Les négliger pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

- Le conducteur et tous les passagers du véhicule doivent porter leur ceinture de sécurité de la manière appropriée.
  Les coussins gonflables SRS sont des dispositifs supplémentaires qui doivent être utilisés de concert avec les ceintures de sécurité.
- Le coussin gonflable SRS du conducteur se déploie avec une force considérable et peut occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, notamment lorsque le conducteur se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. La National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA"), aux États-Unis, fait les recommandations suivantes :

La zone à risque d'un coussin gonflable côté conducteur couvre 2 à 3 in. (50 à 75 mm) de la zone de déploiement du coussin gonflable. Pour assurer une marge de sécurité suffisante, restez à 10 in. (250 mm) du coussin gonflable. Cette distance est mesurée depuis le centre du volant jusqu'à votre sternum. Si vous vous tenez à moins de 10 in. (250 mm), vous pouvez changer votre position de conduite de plusieurs manières :

- Reculez votre siège à la position maximale vous permettant d'atteindre encore aisément les pédales.
- Inclinez légèrement le dossier.
  Même si les véhicules sont conçus différemment, la plupart des conducteurs peuvent maintenir une distance de 10 in. (250 mm), même si le siège se trouve complètement vers l'avant, simplement en inclinant un peu le dossier du siège vers l'arrière. Si la visibilité avant est moindre après avoir incliné le dossier du siège, utilisez un coussin ferme et non glissant pour être assis plus haut ou relevez le siège si cette option est disponible sur votre véhicule.
- Si votre volant est réglable en hauteur, inclinez-le vers le bas. Cela vous permet d'orienter le coussin gonflable vers votre poitrine plutôt que vers la tête et le cou.

Le siège doit être réglé de la manière recommandée ci-dessus par la NHTSA, tout en gardant le contrôle des pédales et du volant, et la vue sur les commandes du bloc d'instrumentation.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS



- Si la rallonge de ceinture de sécurité est reliée à la boucle de ceinture de sécurité du conducteur sans avoir été attachée à la plaque de blocage de la ceinture de sécurité du conducteur, le système de coussin gonflable SRS du conducteur considère que le conducteur porte tout de même sa ceinture même si elle n'est pas attachée. Le coussin gonflable du conducteur pourrait alors ne pas s'activer correctement lors d'une collision, ce qui représenterait un risque de blessures graves, voire mortelles. Bouclez toujours votre ceinture de sécurité lorsque vous utilisez la rallonge.

- Le coussin gonflable SRS du passager avant se déploie également avec une force considérable et peut occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, notamment lorsque le passager avant se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. Le siège du passager avant doit se trouver le plus loin possible du coussin gonflable et le dossier doit être réglé de manière à ce que le passager avant soit assis bien droit.
- Le déploiement d'un coussin gonflable risque d'infliger des blessures graves, voire mortelles, aux bébés et aux enfants mal assis ou mal attachés. Un bébé ou un enfant trop petit pour utiliser une ceinture de sécurité doit être correctement retenu à l'aide d'un dispositif de retenue pour enfants. Lexus recommande vivement de placer et d'attacher correctement tous les bébés et enfants sur les sièges arrière du véhicule à l'aide de dispositifs de retenue adaptés. Les sièges arrière constituent en effet l'endroit le plus sécuritaire pour les bébés et les enfants.
- Ne placez jamais un dispositif de retenue pour enfants de type dos à la route sur le siège du passager avant, même si la lampe témoin AIR BAG OFF s'allume. En cas d'accident, la force et la vitesse de déploiement du coussin gonflable du passager avant sont telles qu'elles pourraient infliger à l'enfant des blessures graves, voire mortelles, si le dispositif de retenue pour enfants de type dos à la route était installé sur le siège du passager avant.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS



- Ne vous asseyez pas sur le bord du siège et ne vous appuyez pas sur le tableau de bord.



- Ne laissez pas un enfant se tenir face au coussin gonflable SRS du passager avant ou s'asseoir sur les genoux d'un passager avant.
- Ne conduisez pas le véhicule si vous ou le passager avez quelque chose sur les genoux.



- Ne vous appuyez pas sur la portière ou sur le longeron du toit, ni sur les montants avant, centraux ou arrière.



- Ne laissez personne s'agenouiller face à la portière sur le siège du passager ni sortir la tête ou les mains à l'extérieur du véhicule.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS





- Ne fixez et n'appuyez rien sur le tableau de bord, le tampon de volant ou la partie inférieure du bloc d'instrumentation.
  Ces objets peuvent se transformer en projectiles lorsque les coussins gonflables SRS du conducteur, du passager avant ou de protection des genoux se déploient.
- Ne fixez rien sur les portières, le pare-brise, les glaces latérales, les montants avant, central et arrière, le longeron du toit ou la poignée d'appui.
- N'accrochez pas de cintres ni d'autres objets rigides sur les crochets porte-vêtements. Tous ces objets pourraient se transformer en projectiles et vous occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, en cas de déploiement du coussin gonflable SRS en rideau.
- Si un recouvrement de vinyle est placé sur la zone de déploiement du coussin SRS de protection pour les genoux, veillez à le retirer.
- N'utilisez pas d'accessoires recouvrant les parties du siège où les coussins gonflables SRS latéraux se déploient, car ceux-ci pourraient nuire au déploiement de ces coussins.
- Ne frappez pas et n'appliquez pas une pression importante à l'emplacement des composants de coussins gonflables SRS affichés à la P. 735.
  Vous risquez de provoquer un mauvais fonctionnement des coussins gonflables SRS.
- Ne touchez à aucun composant des coussins gonflables SRS immédiatement après leur déploiement (gonflage), car ils pourraient être chauds.
- Si vous avez de la difficulté à respirer après le déploiement d'un coussin gonflable SRS, ouvrez une portière ou une glace pour laisser entrer l'air frais, ou quittez le véhicule si vous pouvez le faire en toute sécurité. Dès que possible, nettoyez tous les résidus afin d'éviter les irritations cutanées.

⚠ ATTENTION

Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS

- Si les emplacements de stockage des coussins gonflables SRS, notamment le tampon de volant et les garnitures des montants avant et arrière, sont endommagés ou fissurés, faites-les remplacer par votre concessionnaire Lexus.

Modification et mise au rebut des composants du système de coussins gonflables SRS

Ne mettez pas le véhicule au rebut et n'effectuez aucune des modifications suivantes sans d'abord consulter votre concessionnaire Lexus.
Les coussins gonflables SRS pourraient fonctionner de manière incorrecte ou se déployer (gonfler) accidentellement, ce qui serait susceptible d'occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

- Installation, retrait, démontage et réparation des coussins gonflables SRS.
- Réparations, modifications, retrait ou remplacement du volant, du bloc d'instrumentation, du tableau de bord, des sièges ou du capitonnage des sièges, des montants avant, central ou arrière et du longeron du toit.
- Réparations ou modifications de l'aile ou du pare-chocs avant, ou du côté de l'habitacle.
- Installation de lames de déneigement, de treuils, etc. sur la calandre avant (barre safari, barre kangourou, etc.).
- Modifications au système de suspension du véhicule.
- Installation d'appareils électroniques tels qu'un émetteur-récepteur radio ou un lecteur de CD.
- Modifications à votre véhicule pour une personne aux capacités physiques réduites.

Désactivation des coussins gonflables en rideau si le véhicule fait des tonneaux



ON/OFF (maintenez enfoncé pendant quelques secondes)

La lampe témoin “RSCA OFF” (désactivation des coussins gonflables en rideau en cas de tonneaux) s’allume.
(Uniquement si le contacteur “ENGINE START STOP” est en mode IGNITION ON.)

⚠ ATTENTION

En conduite normale

Assurez-vous que la lampe témoin “RSCA OFF” n’est pas allumée. Si elle reste allumée, les coussins gonflables en rideau ne se déploieront pas en cas d’accident, ce qui pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

Index

Abbreviation list 748

Alphabetical index..... 750

What to do if... 760

For information regarding the navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
A/C	Air Conditioning
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System
AHC	Active Height Control Suspension
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
AVS	Adaptive Variable Suspension
CRS	Child Restraint System
DISP	Display
ECT	Electronic Controlled Transmission
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EDR	Event Data Recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Rating
GCWR	Gross Combination Weight Rating
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
GPS	Global Positioning System
HI	High
I/M	Emission inspection and maintenance
INT	Intermittent
L	Left
LATCH	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LO	Low
M + S	Mud and Snow

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
MMT	Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
N	Normal
OBD	On Board Diagnostics
PCS	Pre-Collision System
PWR	Power
R	Right
RSCA	Roll Sensing of Curtain Shield Airbag
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TIN	Tire Identification Number
TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring (Warning) System
TRAC	Traction Control
TWR	Trailer Weight Rating
VGRS	Variable Gear Ratio Steering
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

Alphabetical index

A

A/C
- Air conditioning filter 608
- Automatic air conditioning system 338

ABS 267
Active head restraint 64
Active height control suspension 246
Active traction control 267
Adaptive front lighting system 195
Adaptive Variable Suspension 257
AFS 195
AHC 246
Air conditioning filter 608
Air conditioning system
- Air conditioning filter 608
- Automatic air conditioning system 338

Airbags
- Airbag operating conditions 127
- Airbag precautions for your child 131
- Airbag warning light 654
- Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 127
- Curtain shield airbag precautions 131
- Front passenger occupant classification system 137
- General airbag precautions 131
- Locations of airbags 123
- Modification and disposal of airbags 135
- Proper driving posture 121, 131
- Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch 136
- Side airbag operating conditions 127
- Side airbag precautions 131
- SRS airbags 123
- SRS airbags instructions for Canadian owners 737

Alarm 118
Antenna 367
Anti-lock brake system 267
Armrest 539
Ashtrays 530
Audio system
- Antenna 367
- AUX port 428
- CD player/changer 370
- DVD player/changer 370
- iPod 416
- MP3/WMA disc 377
- Optimal use 426
- Radio 360
- Steering wheel audio switch 429
- USB memory 416
- Video CD 381

Automatic air conditioning system 338
Automatic headlight leveling system 197
Automatic light control system 194
Automatic transmission
- Automatic transmission 176
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 683
- S mode 178

AUX port 428
Auxiliary box 524
AVS 257

B
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs 637
Wattage 707
Back door
Back door 54
Wireless remote control key 46
Battery
Checking 589
If the vehicle has discharged battery 689
Preparing and checking before winter 292
Bluetooth® audio 408
Bluetooth® phone 465
Bottle holder 523
Brake
Fluid 705
Parking brake 182
Brake assist 267
Break-in tips 163
Brightness control
Instrument light control 185

C
Care
Exterior 558
Interior 561
Seat belts 562
Cargo capacity 284
Cargo hooks 542
CD changer 370
CD player 370
Center differential lock/unlock switch 258
Chains 292
Child restraint system
Booster seats, definition 143
Booster seats, installation 148
Convertible seats, definition 143
Convertible seats, installation 148
Infant seats, definition 143
Infant seats, installation 148
Installing CRS with LATCH anchor 149
Installing CRS with seat belts 151
Installing CRS with top tether strap 156
Child safety
Airbag precautions 131
Battery precautions 590, 691
Child-protectors 50
Child restraint system 143
Heated steering wheel precautions 534
How your child should wear the seat belt 96
Installing child restraints 148
Moon roof precautions 112
Power window lock switch 107
Power window precautions 109
Removed key battery precautions 612
Seat belt precautions 97
Seat heater precautions 538
Child-protectors 50
Cigarette lighter 531

Cleaning
- Exterior ... 558
- Interior ... 561
- Seat belts ... 562

Clock*

Condenser ... 584

Console box ... 520

Cool box ... 526

Cooling system
- Engine overheating ... 692

Crawl Control ... 263

Cruise control ... 205, 209

Cup holder ... 522

Curtain shield airbags ... 123

Customizable features ... 722

D

Daytime running light system ... 196

Defogger
- Rear window ... 353

Dimension ... 698

Dinghy towing ... 317

Display
- Crawl Control display ... 263
- Intuitive parking assist system display ... 225
- Shift position and shift range ... 178
- Trip information ... 192
- Warning message ... 664

Do-it-yourself maintenance ... 571

Door courtesy lights
- Door courtesy lights ... 514
- Wattage ... 707

Door lock
- Back door ... 54
- Side door ... 49
- Wireless remote control key ... 46

Doors
- Door glasses ... 107
- Door lock ... 33, 46, 49
- Side mirrors ... 104

Driver's seat belt reminder light ... 655

Driving
- Break-in tips ... 163
- Correct posture ... 121
- Off-road precautions ... 279
- Procedures ... 162
- Winter driving tips ... 292

Driving position memory ... 83

DVD player/changer ... 370

Dynamic radar cruise control ... 209

E

Electronic key
- If your electronic key battery is discharged ... 611

Emergency flashers ... 642

Emergency, in case of
- If the electronic key does not operate properly ... 686
- If the engine will not start ... 681
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" ... 683
- If the vehicle has discharged battery ... 689
- If the warning buzzer sounds ... 653
- If the warning light turns on ... 653

If the warning message is displayed 664
If you cannot operate back door opener 685
If you have a flat tire 667
If you lose your keys 684
If you think something is wrong 649
If your vehicle becomes stuck 695
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 696
If your vehicle needs to be towed 643
If your vehicle overheats 692
Engine
Compartment 576
Engine switch 173
Hood 575
How to start the engine 172
Identification number 699
If the engine will not start 681
Ignition switch 173
Overheating 692
Engine coolant
Capacity 702
Checking 583
Preparing and checking before winter 292
Engine coolant temperature gauge 184
Engine immobilizer system 116
Engine oil
Capacity 701
Checking 578
Preparing and checking before winter 292
Engine switch 172
Event data recorder 651

F

First-aid kit holder 543
Floor mats 540
Fluid
Brake 705
Power steering 705
Washer 592
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 634
Switch 198
Wattage 707
Four-wheel drive system 258
Front fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 634
Switch 198
Wattage 707
Front passenger occupant classification system 137
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light 655
Front seats
Adjustment 64
Driving position memory 83
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 636
Wattage 707

*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Fuel
Capacity 700
Fuel gauge 184
Fuel pump shut off system 650
Information 708
Refueling 113
Type 700
Fuel door 113
Fuel filler door 113
Fuel pump shut off system 650
Fuses 613

G
Garage door opener 544
Gauges 184
Glove box 519
Glove box light 519

H
Hands-free system 465
Hazard light
Switch 642
Head restraints
Adjusting 87
Headlight cleaner 204
Headlights
Replacing light bulbs 630
Switch 194
Wattage 707
Heaters
Sear heaters 536
Side mirror 353
Steering wheel 534
Hill-start assist control 267
Hood 575
Hooks
Cargo hook 542
Tie-down hooks 542
Horn 183

I
I/M test 570
Identification
Engine 699
Vehicle 699
Ignition
Engine switch 172
Keys 28
Ignition switch 172
Ignition switch 172
Illuminated entry system 514
Indicator lights 187
Inside rear view mirror 102
Instrument panel light control 185
Interior lights
Interior lights list 514
Switch 515
Wattage 707
Intuitive parking assist 224

J
Jack
Vehicle-equipped jack 667
Jack handle 670

K
Keyless entry 46
Keys
Electronic key 28
If you lose your keys 684
If your electronic key battery is discharged 611, 686
Ignition switch 172
Keyless entry 46
Key number 30
Keys 28
Mechanical key 28
Wireless remote control key 46
Knee airbags 123

L
Language
Multi-information display 731
License plate lights
Replacing light bulbs 630
Light bulbs
Replacing 630
Wattage 707
Lights
Door courtesy lights 514
Emergency flasher switch 642
Fog light switch 198
Hazard light switch 642
Headlights switch 194
Interior light switch 515
Personal light switch 516
Replacing light bulbs 630
Turn signal lever 181
Vanity lights 529
Wattage 707
Load capacity 291
Lock steering column 174
Luggage compartment lights
Switch 517
Wattage 707

M
Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 571
General maintenance 567
Maintenance data 698
Maintenance requirements 564
Meter
Instrument panel light control 185
Meters 184
Micro dust and pollen filter 344
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 102
Mirror position memory 83
Side mirrors 104
Vanity mirrors 529
Moon roof 110
MP3 disc 377
Multi-information display 191

N
Navigation System*
Noise from under vehicle 22

O
Odometer 184
Off road precautions 279
Oil
Engine oil 578

*: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Opener
Back door 54
Fuel filler door 113
Hood 575
Outside rear view mirrors
Adjusting and folding 104
Outside temperature display 348
Overhead console 521
Overheating, Engine 692

P
Parking brake 182
Parking lights
Replacing light bulbs 635
Switch 194
Wattage 707
PCS 274
Personal lights
Switch 516
Power back door 55
Power outlet 532
Power steering
Fluid 705
Power windows 107
Pre-collision system 274

R
Radar cruise control 209
Radiator 584
Radio 360
Rear air conditioning system 349
Rear seat
Adjustment 66
Tumbling second seats 67
Tumbling third seats 70
Rear seat entertainment system 433
Rear step bumper 56
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 638
Wattage 707
Rear view monitor system 232
Rear window defogger 353
Rear window wiper 202
Replacing
Key battery 611
Fuses 613
Light bulbs 630
Tires 667
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 734
Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch 136
Reset the maintenance data 565
Roof luggage carrier 284

S
Safety Connect 550
Seat belts
Adjusting the seat belt 91
Automatic Locking Retractor 95
Child restraint system installation 148
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts 562
Emergency Locking Retractor 95
How to wear your seat belt 91
How your child should wear the seat belt 96
Pre-collision seat belts 94
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 95
Reminder light 655

Canadian owners 735
Seat belt pretensioners 94
Seat heaters 536
Seat ventilators 536
Seats
Adjustment precautions 65
Child seats/child restraint system installation 148
Cleaning 561
Driver's seat position memory 83
Front seat adjustment 64
Head restraint 87
Properly sitting in the seat 121
Rear seat adjustment 66
Seat heaters 536
Service reminder indicators 187
Shift lever
Automatic transmission 176
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 683
Side airbags 123
Side marker light 194
Side mirror
Adjusting and folding 104
Mirror position memory 83
Smart access system with push-button start
Entry function 33
Starting the engine 172
"SOS" button 550
Spare tire
Inflation pressure 706
Storage location 667
Spark plug 702
Specifications 698
Speedometer 184
Steering
Adjustment 100
Column lock release 174
Heated steering wheel 534
Steering wheel Audio switches 429
Steering wheel position memory 83
Stop lights
Replacing light bulbs 630
Storage compartment 542
Storage feature 518
Storage precautions 284
Stuck
If your vehicle becomes stuck 695
Sun visors 528
Sunshade
Roof 111
Switch
ECT switch 177
Emergency flasher switch 642
Engine switch 172
Fog light switch 198
Hazard light switch 642
Ignition switch 172
Light switches 194
Power back door 55
Power door lock switch 49
Power window switch 107
Rear window wiper and washer switch 202
Window lock switch 107
Wipers and washer switch 199, 202

T
Tachometer 184
Tail lights
Replacing light bulbs 630
Switch 194
Talk switch 339, 358, 478
Telephone switch 465
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 118
Engine immobilizer system 116
Tie-down hooks 542
Tire inflation pressure 602
Tire pressure warning system 593
Tire information
Glossary 716
Size 706
Tire identification number 712
Uniform tire quality grading 714
Tires
Chains 292
Checking 593
If you have a flat tire 667
Inflation pressure 602
Replacing 672
Rotating tires 593
Size 706
Snow tires 292
Spare tire 667
Tools 667
Total load capacity 698
Touch screen 320
Towing
Dinghy towing 317
Emergency towing 644
Trailer towing 297
Traction control 267
TRAC 267
Trailer towing 297
Trip information display 191
Trip meter 184
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 636, 638
Switch 181
Wattage 707

V
Vanity lights
Vanity lights 529
Wattage 707
Vanity mirrors 529
Variable gear ratio steering 267
Vehicle identification number 699
Vehicle stability control 267
Ventilators 536
VGRS 267
Voice command switch* 339, 358, 478
VSC 267

W

Warning buzzers
Brake system 653
Open door 655
Seat belt reminder 655
Warning lights
Anti-lock brake system 654
Brake system 653
Charging system 653
Fuel level 655
Malfunction indicator lamp 654
Master warning light 657
Open door 655
Pre-collision system 654
Seat belt reminder light 655
SRS airbags 654
Tire pressure 656
Unengaged "Park" 656
Warning messages 664
Warning reflector holder 542
Washer
Checking 592
Preparing and checking before winter 292
Switch 199, 202
Washing and waxing 558
Weight 698
Wheels 606
Wide view front & side monitor 236
Window glasses 107
Window lock switch 107
Windows
Power windows 107
Rear window defogger 353
Washer 199, 202
Windshield wipers 199
Windshield wiper de-icer 354
Wireless remote control key
Replacing the battery 611
Wireless remote control key 46
WMA disc 377

*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

What to do if...

	A tire punctures	P. 667	If you have a flat tire
	The engine does not start	P. 681	If the engine will not start
		P. 116	Engine immobilizer system
		P. 689	If the battery is discharged
	The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 683	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"
	The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 692	If your vehicle overheats
	Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
	The key is lost	P. 684	If you lose your keys
	The battery runs out	P. 689	If the battery is discharged
	The doors cannot be locked	P. 49	Side doors
		P. 54	Back door
	The horn begins to sound	P. 118	Alarm
	The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand	P. 695	If the vehicle becomes stuck



The warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 653

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...



■Warning lights



Brake system warning light

or



P. 653



Charging system warning light P. 653



Malfunction indicator lamp

or



P. 654



SRS warning light P. 654



ABS warning light

or



P. 654



Pre-collision system warning light* P. 654



Slip indicator light P. 654



Cruise control indicator light* P. 654



"AFS OFF" indicator light* P. 654



Tire pressure warning light P. 655



Open door warning light P. 655



Low fuel level warning light P. 655



Driver's seat belt reminder light P. 655



Front passenger's seat belt reminder light P. 655



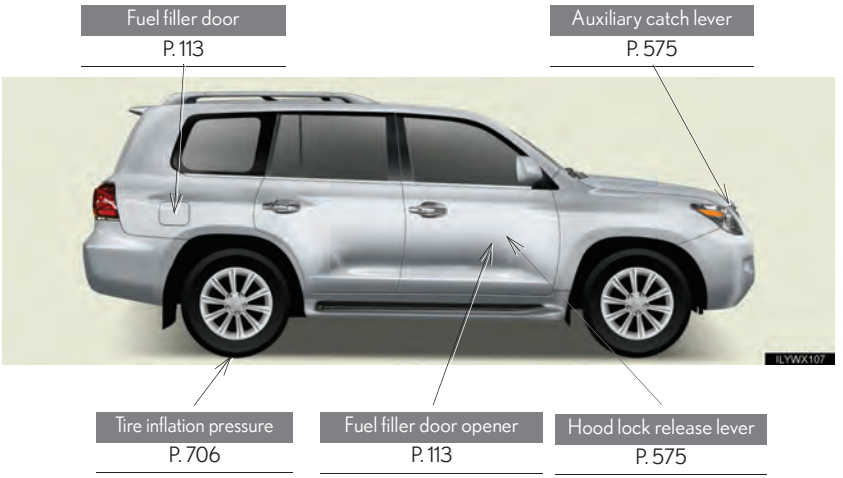
Unengaged "Park" warning light P. 656



Master warning light P. 657

*: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	24.5 gal. (93 L, 20.4 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only	P. 700
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 706
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill – reference)	qt. (L, Imp.qt.) With filter 7.9 (7.5, 6.6) Without filter 7.5 (7.1, 6.2)	
Engine oil type	"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil	P. 701



Owner's Manual:
Publication No. OM60J16U
Part No. 01999-60J16
Printed in Japan 02-1111-01 C
LX 570（北米U）